

MAI LAN HUONG
NGUYỄN THANH LOAN

BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH

CÓ ĐÁP ÁN

8

TÀI BẢN NĂM 2012
CÓ CHỈNH LÝ & BỔ SUNG



MAI LAN HƯƠNG - NGUYỄN THANH LOAN

(Biên soạn)

Bài tập TIẾNG ANH 8

TÁI BẢN THÁNG 7 NĂM 2012

TRUNG TÂM BIÊN SOẠN DỊCH THUẬT SÁCH SÀI GÒN (SAIGONBOOK)
giữ quyền sở hữu tác phẩm

* SÁCH CÓ 32 TRANG HOA VĂN CHÌM, ĐƯỢC IN
VỚI CHẤT LƯỢNG CAO. KHÁCH HÀNG VUI LÒNG
KIỂM TRA, PHÂN BIỆT ĐỂ TRÁNH MUA NHẦM
SÁCH GIẢ.

* CUỐI SÁCH CÓ 4 TRANG TÓM TẮT NGŨ PHÁP
TIẾNG ANH 8.



TRUNG TÂM SÁCH SÀI GÒN
CHUYÊN NGHIỆP BÁN SÁCH
VÀ CHỈ CÓ BÁN SÁCH

nxb Đà Nẵng

MỤC LỤC

UNIT 1:	My friends	5
UNIT 2:	Making arrangement	11
UNIT 3:	At home	17
UNIT 4:	Our past	23
	TEST YOURSELF	29
UNIT 5:	Study habits	33
UNIT 6:	The young pioneers club	40
UNIT 7:	My neighborhood	46
UNIT 8:	Country life and city life	53
	TEST YOURSELF	60
	THE FIRST-SEMESTER EXAMINATION	63
UNIT 9:	A first-aid course	65
UNIT 10:	Recycling	72
UNIT 11:	Traveling around Vietnam	78
UNIT 12:	A vacation abroad	84
	TEST YOURSELF	91
UNIT 13:	Festivals	94
UNIT 14:	Wonders of the world	101
UNIT 15:	Computers	108
UNIT 16:	Inventions	114
	TEST YOURSELF	121
	THE SECOND-SEMESTER EXAMINATION	125
ĐÁP ÁN	129

SÁCH CÓ 32 TRANG HOA VĂN CHÌM, ĐƯỢC IN VỚI CHẤT LƯỢNG CAO. KHÁCH HÀNG VUI LÒNG KIỂM TRA, PHÂN BIỆT ĐỂ TRÁNH MUA NHẦM SÁCH GIẢ.

UNIT 1

MY FRIENDS

I. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

generous orphanage sociable planet next-door humor joke reserved

1. The Earth is the name of the _____ we live on.
2. He has a good sense of _____. He always makes people laugh.
3. After the death of his parents, he was sent to an _____.
4. Don't do it as a _____. It's a serious thing.
5. She lives next to my house. She is my _____ neighbor.
6. It was _____ of you to share your food with me.
7. Mai has a lot of friends. She is very _____.
8. She never talks about her feeling. She seems quite _____.

II. Arrange the adjectives in brackets in the correct order.

Ex: Mrs. Thanh has a (black/ long/ straight) hair.

Mrs. Thanh has a long straight black hair.

1. It is a (wooden/ round) table.

2. She is wearing a (green/ new/ beautiful) dress.

3. What a (sunny/ lovely) day!

4. My uncle lives in a (old/ lovely/ small) house.

5. That girl has (blue/ nice/ big) eyes.

6. He gave me (black/ leather) gloves.

7. My teacher has a (round/ pink/ small) face.

8. It's a (small/ metal/ black) box.

III. Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence, Using (not) adjective + enough + to-infinitive.

Ex: He is tall. He can play volleyball.

He is tall enough to play volleyball.

1. My sister is old. She can drive a car.

2. The radio isn't small. You can't put it in your pocket.

3. This coat isn't warm. I don't wear it in winter.

4. She is beautiful and intelligent. She can become Miss World.

5. The weather was fine. We could go camping.

6. Those apples aren't ripe. We can't eat them.

7. Mr. Robinson isn't rich. He can't buy a house.

8. The worker is clever. He can make fine things from wood.

IV. Complete the dialogues, using *enough* as an adjective (before nouns) or adverb (after adjectives) with the word in brackets.

Ex: Is she going to get married?

No, she's not old enough to get married. (old)

1. Did he pass the examination?

Yes, he worked _____ the examination. (hard)

2. Do you want to play tennis today?

No, I don't feel _____ tennis today. (well)

3. Why don't we go swimming?

Well, it's _____. (warm)

4. Are they going to buy that house?

You must be joking. They aren't _____ such an expensive house. (rich)

5. Would you like to go away on holiday?

I'm sorry I can't. I haven't got _____ on holiday. (money)

6. Hurry along, children! We must get to the airport on time

Don't worry, Mom. We have _____ to the airport. (time)

7. Could you move the piano?

I'm afraid I'm not _____ it. (strong)

8. Can she read a newspaper in French?

No, she doesn't know _____ a newspaper. (French)

9. Let's get a taxi.

No, I think it's not _____ a taxi. (far)

10. How many people will be there for the meeting tonight?

There'll be twenty. Have we got _____ for everyone. (chairs)

V. Change the following sentences into exclamatory sentences, using "What (+ a/ an) + adj + noun!"

Ex: The room is very dirty.

→ What a dirty room!

1. The boys are naughty.

→ _____

2. The weather is awful.

→ _____

3. The girl is very beautiful.

→ _____

4. The dresses are very lovely.

→ _____

5. The story is very interesting.

→ _____

6. The milk is very sour.

→ _____

VI. Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple tense.

Ex: The sun (rise) _____ in the east.

The sun rises in the east.

1. She _____ (not drink) coffee. She _____ (drink) Coca Cola.
2. It _____ (be) often hot in the summer.
3. What _____ you _____ (do) every evening?
4. The earth _____ (circle) the sun once every 365 days.
5. I _____ (see) her very often.
6. Most rivers _____ (flow) into the sea.
7. Vegetarians _____ (not eat) meat.
8. Bees _____ (make) honey.
9. Rice _____ (not grow) in cold climates.
10. Where _____ Martin _____ (come) from? - He (be) _____ Scottish.

VII. Make questions in column A to which the answers in column B.

A

B

- | | |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. _____ ? | Nguyen Bao Quoc. |
| 2. _____ ? | fifteen. |
| 3. _____ ? | tall, thin, short curly hair. |
| 4. _____ ? | humorous, kind and helpful. |
| 5. _____ ? | at 2/ 16A Tran Hung Dao Street. |
| 6. _____ ? | his parents and elder sister. |
| 7. _____ ? | swimming, reading, and fishing |
| 8. _____ ? | Phong and Nam. |

VIII. Fill in the blanks with a suitable preposition.

1. There are lots of parties _____ Christmas.
2. I received a letter _____ my friend yesterday.
3. She usually goes swimming _____ Sunday mornings.
4. Khoi is my close friend. I spend most of my free time _____ him.
5. He does volunteer work _____ a local hospital.
6. His friends didn't laugh _____ his jokes.
7. My friends usually enjoy my sense _____ humor.
8. He lives _____ 26 Tran Phu Street _____ Ha Noi.

IX. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

days lot time younger free with large some ones listening

Hang is fourteen years old. She is a pretty girl (1) _____ long black hair. She goes to school five (2) _____ a week and usually goes swimming with (3) _____ friends on Saturday mornings. She lives in a (4) _____ house with her mother, father and (5) _____ brother at 2/34 Nguyen Trai Street. Hang has a (6) _____ of friends. Of all her friends, Nga and Thuy are the (7) _____ she spends most of her (8) _____ with. They all like (9) _____ to music and playing sports in their (10) _____ time.

X. Complete the dialogue.

Hung : Hi, Ba.

Ba : Hi, Hung. (1) _____ weekends?

Hung : I went to Vung Tau.

Ba : Lucky you! (2) _____ ?

Hung : I went with some of my friends and my cousin, Lien.

Ba : Lien? (3) _____ her?

Hung : I don't think so. Lien is one of my first cousins. She lives in Hue.

Ba : (4) _____ ?

Hung : She's very beautiful. She's slim and tall. She has long black hair and big, brown eyes.

Ba : (5) _____ ?

Hung : Fifteen. (6) _____ to meet her?

Ba : I'd love to.

TEST FOR UNIT 1

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. a. <u>h</u> appy | b. <u>ch</u> aracter | c. <u>f</u> at | d. class <u>m</u> ate |
| 2. a. <u>t</u> eacher | b. <u>p</u> leasure | c. <u>p</u> lease | d. <u>m</u> ee <u>t</u> |
| 3. a. <u>ch</u> aracter | b. <u>C</u> hristmas | c. <u>ch</u> ildren | d. <u>s</u> chool |
| 4. a. <u>t</u> omorrow | b. <u>b</u> rown | c. <u>n</u> ow | d. <u>h</u> ow |
| 5. a. <u>s</u> lim | b. <u>th</u> in | c. <u>s</u> mile | d. <u>v</u> isit |

II. Choose the most suitable word or phrase to fill in the blanks.

- I _____ a letter from my old friend last week.
a. sent b. gave c. received d. took
- She spends most of her free time _____ volunteer work.
a. doing b. to do c. do d. for doing
- He is _____ to ride his bike to school.
a. not enough old b. enough not old c. not old enough d. enough old
- She is wearing a _____ dress.
a. red new pretty b. new pretty red c. pretty red new d. pretty new red
- Her mother _____ this city two years ago.
a. left b. leaves c. is leaving d. will leave
- I find Peter is not communicative. He's rather _____ in public.
a. kind b. reserved c. sociable d. humorous
- He enjoys _____ to music while he's studying.
a. to listen b. listen c. listening d. to listening
- Each of them _____ a different character.
a. have b. has c. to have d. having
- A child whose parents have died is called a(n) _____.
a. cousin b. neighbor c. nephew d. orphan

10. Lien is very shy but her sister is _____.

- a. reserved b. generous c. outgoing d. kind

III. Complete the paragraph. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form or tense.

Nien (1)_____ (be) Hoa's next-door neighbor in Hue. She (2)_____ (be) very beautiful. She (3)_____ (have) big brown eyes and a lovely smile. Last week, she (4)_____ (go) to Ha Noi (5)_____ (visit) Hoa. They (6)_____ (travel) around the city and (7)_____ (see) a lot of interesting places. Nien (8)_____ (think) Ha Noi (9)_____ (be) beautiful but so noisy and busy, so she (10)_____ (not like) (11)_____ (live) there.

IV. Supply the correct word form.

1. People in my country are very warm and _____. (friend)
2. An _____ is a home for children whose parents are dead. (orphan)
3. L.A. Hill is a _____ writer. (humor)
4. I'm _____ sorry for the delay. (extreme)
5. She looks more _____ than her sister. (beauty)
6. They were very _____ to survive a shipwreck. (luck)
7. I love the _____ of summer evenings in the countryside. (peaceful)
8. Those cats look _____. (love)
9. Bao is very _____, kind and generous. (social)
10. Each of my friends has a _____ character. (differ)

V. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. I strongly believe that friends plays an important role in our life.
A B C D
2. Children nowadays spend more time to play video games than reading books.
A B C D
3. This software isn't good enough for children use.
A B C D
4. Hoa is very happy when she received a letter from her friend this morning.
A B C D
5. We are very close friends although we have quite different character.
A B C D

VI. Read the passage carefully, then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

Do you have any close friends? I think everybody at least has one close friend in their life. And so do I. I have two close friends, Hanh and Mai. We are in the same class at primary school, and then secondary school. We are also neighbors so we spend most of our time in learning and playing together. Hanh is a beautiful girl with big black eyes and an oval rosy face. She is an intelligent student who is always at the top of the class. She likes reading, and she often goes to the library whenever she has free time. Mai isn't as beautiful

as Hanh, but she has a lovely smile and looks very healthy. Mai is very sporty. She spends most of her free time playing sports. Mai is a volleyball star of our school. She is also very sociable and has a good sense of humor. Her jokes always make us laugh. I love both of my friends and I always hope our friendship will never die.

1. The writer formed her close friendship at primary school.
2. The writer lives far from her friends.
3. Hanh always spends her free time in the library.
4. Mai is good at sport.
5. Mai's friends sometimes get tired of her jokes.
6. The writer hopes to have a lasting friendship.

VII. Put the words or phrases in correct order to make sentences.

1. enough/ Jane/ stay/ to/ alone/ old/ isn't/ at home.

2. you/ going/ to/ are/ what/ do/ next weekend?

3. she/ hair/ black/ has/ long/ straight.

4. in the east/ rises/ sun/ the/ in the west/ sets/ and.

5. table/ large/ was/ in the kitchen/ there/ a/ wooden/ round.

6. awful/ an/ what/ house!

7. have/ money/ buy/ that/ we/ enough/ to/ didn't/ car.

8. free/ he/ most/ time/ sports/ spends/ of/ his/ playing.

VIII. Write a paragraph about Trung, using the information in the box.

Name:	Nguyễn Mạnh Trung	Age:	15
Appearance:	tall, fat, short curly hair		
Characters:	sociable, generous, kind		
Address:	24 Nguyễn Du Street, Ho Chi Minh City		
Family:	mother, father and two younger sisters		
Hobbies:	swimming, reading		
Friends:	Nam, Thanh, Phong		

His name is _____

UNIT 2**MAKING ARRANGEMENT****I. Match the name of things in column A with their description in column B.****A**

1. answering machine
2. movie theater
3. address book
4. mobile phone
5. fax machine
6. public telephone
7. telephone directory

B

- a. a book in which you can write people's names, addresses, telephone numbers, etc.
- b. an equipment used for sending and receiving copies of documents.
- c. a book containing the names, telephone numbers, and addresses of people and businesses.
- d. a building in which movies are shown.
- e. a telephone which is available for people in general to use.
- f. a machine that answers your telephone and records messages.
- g. a telephone you can carry around with you.

1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____

II. Write sentences. Say what the people are going to do.

Ex: I feel very tired. (take a day off)

I am going to take a day off.

1. My uncle has won some money. (buy a new car)

2. They received a wedding present from their pen pal friend, Nick. (write a letter to thank him)

3. I'll have an annual holiday next month. (visit Ha Long Bay)

4. My father has a bad cough. (stop smoking)

5. Linh is studying medicine. (be a doctor)

6. We have bought some bricks. (build a garage)

7. The windows are dirty and Mai'll be free this afternoon. (clean the windows)

8. Jane and Lan have decided to have a party. (invite lots of people)

9. Now it's starting to rain, and you haven't got an umbrella. (get wet)

10. I feel awful. There's a terrible feeling in my stomach. (be sick)

III. Write a question with *going to* for each situation. Use the words in brackets.

Ex: I'm going to play soccer this afternoon. (What/ you/ do?)

What are you going to do this afternoon?

1. Phuong is going to a party tonight. (What/ she/ wear?)
2. I have just bought a poster. (Where/ you/ put it?)
3. My parents are going to China next summer. (How/ they/ travel?)
4. We are having a dinner party next Saturday. (Who/ you/ invite?)
5. They are meeting Tom at the airport. (When/ he/ arrive?)
6. My sister has invited some friends home for lunch. (What/ she/ cook?)
7. I'm too busy to paint the door today. (you/ paint it/ tomorrow?)
8. Minh isn't going to visit his parents on Saturday. (he/ visit them/ Sunday?)

IV. What is going to happen in these situations? Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences.

Ex: There are a lot of black clouds in the sky. (rain)

It is going to rain.

1. How pale that girl is! (faint)
She _____
2. The man can't see where he's walking. There is a hole in front of him. (fall)
He _____
3. Look out! There's a car coming. (crash)
We _____
4. There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. A lot of water is coming in through the hole. (sink)
The boat _____
5. It's 7.30 now. I have to be at work at 8 o'clock but the journey from home to the office takes 45 minutes. (be late)
I _____
6. The traffic lights are red. The woman and her son are at the zebra crossing. (cross)
They _____ when the traffic lights are green.
7. Snow is falling very heavy and wind is blowing hard. (be a snow storm)
There _____
8. You can see a plane coming down. It's out of control and falling to the ground. (crash)
It _____

V. Complete the sentences using will (ll') or going to.

1. Look at those black clouds. It _____ (rain)
2. I feel terrible. I think I _____ sick. (be)
3. Tom _____ here at about 8 o'clock. (probably/ get)
4. I think Sarah _____ the present we bought for her. (like)
5. We _____ my grandparents this evening. (visit)
6. 'Gary phoned you while you were out.' 'OK. I _____ him back. (call)
7. This cheese looks horrible. I _____ it. (eat)
8. Tom _____ the exam. He hasn't studied hard enough. (not/ pass)
9. 'Are you going out this morning?' 'No. I _____ my room. (tidy)
10. _____ television this evening? (you/ watch)

VI. Complete the sentences, using the appropriate adverbs in the box.

in on there outside inside upstairs here downstairs out over

1. The children love Disneyland. They want to go there again.
2. I opened the box and look _____.
3. She ran _____ to open the door for him.
4. I'm afraid I can't drink coffee with milk _____.
5. Let's go _____ and sit in the sun.
6. Wait _____. I'll be back in a minute.
7. He ran up the stairs to see what happened _____.
8. What's _____ at the Rex Movie Theater this week?
9. Come _____ to my place and we'll discuss it.
10. Dr Hammond is _____ right now. Can I take a message?

VII. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form or tense.

1. Bad driving _____ (cause) many accidents.
2. Nga and Hoa _____ (see) a movie tonight.
3. Sue can _____ (speak) Vietnamese very well.
4. Mozart _____ (write) more than 600 pieces of music.
5. 'How _____ you _____ (learn) to drive?' 'My father _____ (teach) me.'
6. We usually _____ (go) to the library three times a week, but last week we _____ (go) twice.
7. Alexander Graham Bell _____ (introduce) the telephone in 1876.
8. Yesterday I _____ (be) busy, so I _____ (not have) time to phone you.
9. 'What _____ you _____ (do) next summer vacation?'
'I _____ (visit) my grandparents in Nha Trang.'
10. Would you like _____ (come) to dinner tomorrow?

VIII. Fill in the blanks with a suitable preposition

1. The post office is not far _____ my house.
2. Let's meet _____ the City Theater _____ 7 o'clock.

3. She was born _____ May 16th, 2001 _____ Nha Trang.
4. He worked _____ deaf-mutes _____ Boston University.
5. Mrs. Lien said you could reach her _____ 8 603 423.
6. Snow is falling all _____ the country.
7. Will you pick me _____ after the party?
8. The secretary took a message _____ her boss.
9. He emigrated _____ Canada _____ 1870s.
10. We all agreed _____ their request for a full investigation.

IX. Complete the passage with the words in the box.

who carry coins might need to located no travels less

Nowadays, you don't (1) _____ to be at home or at the office to use the telephone anymore. Mobile phones (also known as cellular phones) have (2) _____ wires. You can (3) _____ one in your pocket or keep one in your car. A call from a mobile phone (4) _____ along radio waves to stations (5) _____ in different places. From there, the radio signal is connected (6) _____ the regular phone system. With a mobile phone, any one (7) _____ can drive and talk can also drive and phone. This means (8) _____ wasted time: You don't have to look for a phone booth or use (9) _____ to make a call. So remember, next time you are at the beach or riding your bicycle, there (10) _____ be a call for you!

X. Put the sentences below in the correct order to make a complete conversation.

- _____ OK. I'll come with you. What time can we meet?
- _____ Fine. I'm seeing Mai later this evening. Shall I ask her to come too?
- 1 Are you doing anything tomorrow evening, Nga?
- _____ Well, I'm going to see the movie *Hijackers*. Would you like to come?
- _____ The film begins at 8.45, so let's meet at about 8.30 outside the theater. OK?
- _____ No. Why?
- _____ Yes, do that. I'll see you tomorrow then.

TEST FOR UNIT 2

I. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. a. machine | b. mobile | c. movie | d. theater |
| 2. a. directory | b. telephone | c. invention | d. experiment |
| 3. a. arrange | b. demonstrate | c. transmit | d. answer |
| 4. a. delivery | b. emigrate | c. introduce | d. customer |
| 5. a. furniture | b. university | c. patient | d. hospital |

II. Choose the most suitable words or phrases to fill the blanks.

1. Deaf-mutes can _____ speak _____ hear.
a. both ... and b. not only... but also c. neither ... nor d. either ... or
2. Alexander Graham Bell was born _____ March 3, 1847.
a. in b. on c. at d. during

3. They _____ from Canada to America to find work.
a. left b. immigrated c. came d. emigrated
4. Would you like _____ a message?
a. to leave b. leave c. leaving d. left
5. She came _____ with a new idea for increasing sale.
a. on b. up c. in d. over
6. You can use a(n) _____ to record messages when you are out.
a. telephone directory b. mobile phone
c. fax machine d. answering machine
7. Don't come in. Please wait _____ for your turn.
a. inside b. downstairs c. outside d. upstairs
8. I _____ a quick phone call. Can you wait or me?
a. make b. am going to make c. will make d. made
9. The match was _____ live all over the world.
a. traveled b. demonstrated c. transmitted d. arranged
10. You can see a lot of famous paintings in this _____.
a. service b. invention c. demonstration d. exhibition

III. Supply the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

Isaac Newton (1) _____ (be) one of the greatest men in the history of scientists. He (2) _____ (bear) in a small village of Wootspore in England. His father (3) _____ (be) a poor farmer. When the boy was fourteen, his father (4) _____ (die). Newton left school and (5) _____ (help) his mother on the farm. But the boy (6) _____ (not like) farming, he was fond of the poetry and mathematics. So Newton was sent to school. After he (7) _____ (leave) school, Newton studied at Cambridge University. He lectured on mathematics at Cambridge University after (8) _____ (graduate). His greatest discovery (9) _____ (be) the law of gravitation.

IV. Supply the correct word form.

1. I'll make _____ for the meeting tonight. (arrange)
2. There was still no _____ on what to do next. (agree)
3. Ho Chi Minh City is an important _____ center. (commerce)
4. Michael Faraday made a lot of _____ in the field of electricity. (invent)
5. We're thinking of _____ to Australia. (emigrate)
6. There was an _____ of paintings at the Art Gallery. (exhibit)
7. Your order is ready for _____. (deliver)
8. This old man is _____ in one ear. (deafen)
9. Thomas Watson was Bell's _____, wasn't he? (assist)
10. He was _____ in demonstrating his invention. (success)

V. Make questions for the underlined words.

1. The film "Harry Potter" is on at 8.30.

2. I'm going to play table tennis this evening.

3. She lives downstairs.

4. They bought new fishing rods yesterday.

5. He worked with deaf-mutes.

6. They demonstrated the telephone to the public.

7. Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone.

8. Marie Curie was born in Poland.

VI. Read the passage, then choose the correct answers.

Alexander Graham Bell was born in Scotland in 1847, but when he was a young man of twenty-three he moved with his parents to Canada. Before the year was over, young Graham had left his family and gone to Boston. Though Bell was a dreamer, he was also a practical thinker and a man of action. In Boston, where he worked by day as a teacher of the deaf, he worked far into the night experimenting with the electrical transmission of the sound. This led to the invention of the telephone.

1. Alexander G. Bell _____.
a. was born in England b. was born in the eighteenth century
c. was a Scotsman d. lived far from his family when he was a child
2. When did he emigrate to the United States?
a. 1874 b. 1867 c. 1870 d. 1871
3. In Boston, he taught people who _____.
a. were not able to speak b. were not able to hear
c. were not able to learn d. were not able to see
4. Which of the followings is not used to describe A. G. Bell?
a. dreamy b. practical c. active d. sociable
5. Which of the following statements is not true about Alexander G. Bell?
a. He lives with his parents until he was twenty-three.
b. He worked with the deaf in Boston.
c. He experimented with ways of transmitting sound by day.
d. He invented the telephone

VII. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

1. Peter is too young to see the horror film.

→ Peter is not _____

2. Remember to turn off the light before going out.

→ Don't _____

3. That girl is very intelligent.

→ What _____

4. I intend to come over to pick you up.

→ I am _____

5. Hoa is older than Nien.

→ Nien is _____

6. Her hair is long and black.

→ She has _____

7. The theater is near Hoa's house.

→ The theater isn't _____

8. Alexander G. Bell invented the telephone.

→ Alexander G. Bell was _____

9. I'll telephone you tomorrow evening.

→ I'll make _____

10. How about going to the movie tonight?

→ Let's _____

UNIT 3

AT HOME

I. Fill in the blanks with the suitable verbs in the correct tense or form.

sweep feed rub empty dust tidy cook wash do cover

1. My mother _____ the furniture every day.

2. She _____ the garbage two days ago.

3. Would you like to come for dinner? I _____ a hearty dinner tonight.

4. He _____ the rugs last Sunday.

5. They _____ the dishes now.

6. You'd better _____ your room before your mother arrives.

7. What _____ you usually _____ your dog on?

8. Mai _____ the kitchen floor yesterday evening.

9. Lan _____ her household chores at the moment.

10. You must _____ electrical sockets so that children do not put anything into them.

II. Put the words in the suitable groups.

Cupboard, refrigerator, armchair, coffee table, knife, couch, saucepan, bed, television, stereo, chair, fan, desk, pot, wardrobe, oven, steamer, cassette player, rice cooker, dish washer, washing machine

• Furniture: _____

• Electrical equipments: _____

• Kitchen implements: _____

III. Complete the sentence with *must* or *have/ has to*. Sometimes both are possible.

Ex: It's 11 o'clock. I must/ have to go now

1. Vietnamese children _____ wear uniform when they go to school.
2. Last night my sister was ill. We _____ call the doctor.
3. I have bad toothache. I _____ make an appointment with the dentist.
4. I don't want to _____ wait in a queue for ages.
5. She _____ work on Saturday morning.
6. When you come to California, you _____ come and see us soon.
7. This is a terrible party. We _____ go home.
8. If there are no taxis we'll _____ walk.
9. Daniel _____ go to the bank. He hasn't any money.
10. You really _____ hurry up, Vicky. We don't want to be late.

IV. Fill in the blanks with *mustn't* or *don't/ doesn't have to*.

Ex: Cars mustn't park in front of the entrance.

1. They _____ work on Saturday.
2. Visitors _____ feed the animal.
3. Tim _____ wear uniform at school.
4. You _____ touch that switch. It's very dangerous.
5. Don't make so much noise. We _____ wake the baby.
6. There's a lift in the building, so I _____ climb the stairs.
7. Staff _____ smoke when serving customers.
8. Sally is extremely rich. She _____ work.
9. I don't want anyone to know about our plan. You _____ tell anyone.
10. You _____ be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.

V. Give advice with *ought to* or *ought not to*. Use the words given.

Ex: I feel sick. (go to the doctor)

You ought to go to the doctor.

1. Minh looks very tired. (go to bed late)

2. My parents are going to visit France. (learn a few French words)

3. There is a traffic jam and the people are rushing forward. (drive like that)

4. It's eight o'clock. Helen is still sleeping. (get up earlier.)

5. Nam is going to have final exams tomorrow morning. He is playing computer games now. (play computer games - learn the lessons)

6. The speed limit is 30 mph, but Catherine is driving 50 mph. (drive so fast)

7. The street is too narrow. It's always full of vehicles. (They/ widen this street)

8. I'm bored. I need a change. (go away for a few days)

VI. Fill in each blank with a correct reflexive pronoun.

Ex: I cut myself shaving this morning.

1. My sister often looks at _____ in the mirror.
2. Mark made _____ a sandwich.
3. This refrigerator defrosts _____.
4. Hoa and I _____ saw that accident yesterday.
5. Did you pay for _____?
6. The children can look after _____ for a few days.
7. Please help me. I can't do it _____.
8. Take care of _____!
9. Please try and understand how I feel. Put _____ in my position.
10. I gave them a key so that they could let _____ in.

VII. Complete the sentences, using reflexive pronouns with the verbs in the box.

burn	cut	look after	decorate	paint	defend
buy	think of	pay for	turn off	help	

Ex: Tom cut himself shaving this morning.

1. I don't want you to pay for me. I'll _____.
2. Some people are very selfish. They only _____.
3. Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don't _____.
4. The computer will _____ if you don't use it.
5. Let's _____ the house _____.
6. Don't worry about Jane and me. We can _____.
7. Who decorated the Christmas tree? The children _____ it _____.
8. Joanna _____ these gifts _____.
9. If you want more to eat, _____, children.
10. If someone attacks you, you need to be able to _____.

VIII. Match the questions in column A to the answers in column B.

A

1. Why didn't Nam come to the party?
2. Why were you late?
3. Why do they have to leave soon?
4. Why are you laughing?
5. Why don't you take a taxi?
6. Why did your sister stay late at the office?
7. Why couldn't Jane pass the final exam?
8. Why wasn't Mary at work yesterday?

B

- a. Because they'll have an appointment at ten.
- b. Because she had to finish the report.
- c. Because he had a lot of homework to do.
- d. Because we missed the first bus.
- e. Because the stories are so funny.
- f. Because I don't have enough money.
- g. Because she didn't study hard enough.
- h. Because she didn't feel well.

1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____; 8. ____

IX. Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions: *in, at, on, after, under, between, beside, among, out of, above, beneath.*

1. There is a bus station _____ the end of this road.
2. Keep those medicines _____ the children's reach.
3. I lost my keys somewhere _____ the car and the house.
4. Come _____ and sit _____ your sister.
5. D comes _____ C in the alphabet.
6. The boat sank _____ the waves.
7. Don't shelter _____ the trees when it's raining.
8. Please put these books _____ the bookshelf _____ the desk.
9. I often feel nervous when I am _____ strangers.
10. Children must attend school _____ the ages of 5 and 16.

X. Complete the passage with the correct form of the word in brackets

It's a (1) _____ (marvel) idea for children to do some cooking at an early age. Generally (2) _____ (speak), most children can't wait to help in the kitchen and love getting involved in the (3) _____ (prepare) of their meals. They should be (4) _____ (courage) to do so. It's important to show them how to do things (5) _____ (correct) but they should not be criticised too much. Although the finished result may not be quite to your (6) _____ (like), the young cook will undoubtedly find it quite the (7) _____ (taste) food he or she has ever eaten.

Kitchens can, of course, be (8) _____ (danger) places and so the absolute (9) _____ (important) of keeping an eye on the children at all times cannot be emphasized too heavily. Sharp knives, for example, should be avoided until children are old enough to handle them (10) _____ (safe).

XI. Choose the correct answer to complete the passage.

Viet is a student and he (1) _____ in a bed-sit in a suburb of Ha Noi. It's a part of an old house. He has one room and a kitchen and (2) _____ a bathroom with three other people. (3) _____ his room, there is a bed on the left hand side. There is (4) _____ armchair beside the bed. The desk is (5) _____ the bed and there is a closet on the right side of the room. Above the desk, there is a (6) _____ and above the bed there is a clock. He has a television and a cassette player, (7) _____. In the kitchen, there is a (8) _____ on the right hand side. The sink is (9) _____ the cooker. There's a small table and two chairs in the center. The kitchen is rather (10) _____, but it's OK. Viet likes his room very much.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|--------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. live | b. lives | c. will live | d. is going to live |
| 2. a. shares | b. has | c. puts | d. takes |
| 3. a. At | b. On | c. In | d. Inside |
| 4. a. a | b. an | c. the | d. some |
| 5. a. beneath | b. above | c. between | d. opposite |
| 6. a. bookshelf | b. chair | c. oven | d. refrigerator |
| 7. a. so | b. too | c. either | d. neither |
| 8. a. cook | b. cooking | c. cooker | d. cooks |

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
| 9. a. next | b. on | c. in | d. near |
| 10. a. large | b. suitable | c. dangerous | d. small |

TEST FOR UNIT 3

I. Choose the word that has underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. <u>feed</u> | b. <u>clean</u> | c. <u>sweep</u> | d. <u>head</u> |
| 2. a. <u>floor</u> | b. <u>four</u> | c. <u>room</u> | d. <u>door</u> |
| 3. a. <u>sink</u> | b. <u>knife</u> | c. <u>fire</u> | d. <u>rice</u> |
| 4. a. <u>house</u> | b. <u>couch</u> | c. <u>ought</u> | d. <u>counter</u> |
| 5. a. <u>candy</u> | b. <u>fry</u> | c. <u>many</u> | d. <u>happy</u> |

II. Choose the most suitable words or phrases to fill the blanks.

- The children are old enough to look after _____.
a. them b. their c. himself d. themselves
- We ought _____ the wardrobe in the corner opposite the bed.
a. put b. push c. to put d. to push
- You should go to the _____ to buy some fish and vegetables.
a. market b. post office c. kitchen d. theater
- I _____ work every day from 8.30 to 5.30.
a. ought to b. must c. should d. have to
- The calendar is _____ the clock, _____ the picture and the lamp.
a. on/ next to b. under/ between c. behind/ between d. above/ on
- She worked hard _____ she could pass the final exams.
a. so that b. in order to c. as result d. so as to
- Let's paint the house _____. It will be much cheaper.
a. yourself b. herself c. ourselves d. themselves
- These shoes are very well-made. They _____ a long time.
a. last b. will last c. must last d. are going to last
- It is dangerous to let children _____ in the kitchen.
a. play b. to play c. playing d. to playing
- We've got a problem. I hope you can help _____.
a. yourself b. myself c. ourselves d. us

III. Supply the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Although I (1) _____ (have) a car, I prefer (2) _____ (travel) by train, especially if I have to (3) _____ (make) a long journey. As the train (4) _____ (travel) at full speed through the countryside, I can (5) _____ (relax), drink a coffee, read a book, or just (6) _____ (look) out of the window, sometimes the movement of the train (7) _____ (keep) me asleep, something you couldn't do while (8) _____ (drive) a car. The trouble (9) _____ (be) that I hate (10) _____ (wait) in cold stations, and I (11) _____ (get) angry when I have to waste time on (12) _____ (look) for a taxi or a bus at the beginning or the end of my journey.

IV. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. I can stay in bed tomorrow morning because I haven't to go to work.
A B C D
2. The students ought to learn their lessons careful before the exams.
A B C D
3. Don't worry so much. The children can look after themselves.
A B C D
4. You must not let children to play in the kitchen because it is a dangerous place.
A B C D
5. Let's putting the armchair opposite the couch in the living room.
A B C D
6. It takes me two hours to do all the household chore every day.
A B C D
7. Please put the doll on the shelf, among the flower vase and the lamp.
A B C D
8. You don't have to drive faster than 65 mph or you might get a ticket.
A B C D
9. Why do we have to put all dangerous objects out of children reach?
A B C D
10. Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working yourself?
A B C D

V. Supply the correct word form.

1. She's always worried about the _____ of her family. (safe)
2. Don't leave the light on. It wastes _____. (electric)
3. Most teenagers like taking part in _____ service. (communal)
4. This river is very _____ for swimmers. (danger)
5. The _____ of atom bomb is very terrible. (destroy)
6. Hard work always brings _____. (succeed)
7. Those clothes are _____ for cold weather. (suit)
8. You must put all medicines in _____ cupboards. (lock)

VI. Read the passage then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

We have just moved into a new house and I have been working hard all morning. I have been trying to get my new house in order. This has not been easy because I own over a thousand books. To make matters worse, the room is rather small, so I have temporarily put my books on the floor. At the moment, they cover every inch of floor space and I actually have to walk on them to get in or out of the room. My sister helped me to carry one of my old bookcases up the stairs. She went into my room and got a big surprise when she saw all those books on the floor. 'This is the prettiest carpet I have ever seen,' she said. She looked at it for a while then added, 'You don't need bookcases at all. You can sit here on your spare time and read the carpet!'

1. The writer are trying to arrange her new house neatly.
2. The room isn't big enough to hold all of her books.

3. The writer has more than one bookcase.
4. The writer has a beautiful carpet.
5. Her sister didn't seem at all surprised when she went into the room.

VII. Make questions for the following sentences. Use the given question words.

1. I had to go to the police station last week. (why)

2. They must leave soon. (when)

3. Jane has to go away for a long time. (how long)

4. You ought to practice English frequently. (how often)

5. We have to go home early. (what time)

6. Children mustn't see that film. (why)

7. He'll have to go somewhere for a few days. (where)

8. You should do something to help homeless people. (what)

UNIT 4

OUR PAST

I. Write the past simple form of the following verbs.

Infinitive	Past	Infinitive	Past
be	_____	find	_____
use	_____	fall	_____
light	_____	escape	_____
make	_____	graze	_____
fit	_____	lose	_____
go	_____	choose	_____
appear	_____	come	_____
hold	_____	break	_____

II. Complete the sentences, using the past simple of the suitable verbs in part I.

Ex: A lion escaped from its cage yesterday morning.

1. A light _____ at the end of the road.
2. The sheep _____ peacefully in the fields.
3. He _____ a fire in the living room.
4. They _____ an Autumn Fashion Show three months ago.
5. I _____ my keys on the way home this afternoon.
6. The Americans _____ Mr. Bush as President.
7. We _____ home and _____ her asleep on the sofa.

8. She _____ over and _____ her leg.
9. We _____ on a school trip to a museum.
10. She _____ me a beautiful dress for my birthday party.

III. Complete these sentences with *used to* or *didn't use to*.

Ex: I used to go swimming (go swimming) but now I don't go swimming any more.

1. My father gave up smoking two years ago. He _____ (smoke) a packet of cigarettes a day.
2. There _____ (be) a movie theater here but it closed a long time ago.
3. Mr. An _____ (not drink) coffee when he was young but he like it now.
4. Peter _____ (have) a motorbike, but last month he sold it and bought a car.
5. I _____ (not like) her but we are best friends now.
6. They came to live in the city last year. They _____ (live) in a small village in the country.
7. My sister _____ (play) tennis a lot but she doesn't play very often now.
8. When I was a child I _____ (not study) hard.

IV. Complete the dialogue. Put in *used to* with the verb.

Mrs. Bell is a hundred years old. She is the oldest person in the village. A radio reporter is interviewing her.

Mrs. Bell : I've always lived in the village, but not always in this house.

Reporter : (1) _____ (Where/ you/ live?)

Mrs. Bell : When I was a girl, (2) _____ (we/ live) at Apple Tree Farm.

Reporter : But life was hard, wasn't it?

Mrs. Bell : Oh, yes. Things (3) _____ (be) different from the way they are now. In those days (4) _____ (we/ not/ have) electricity.

Reporter : And (5) _____ (you/ help) with the farm work?

Mrs. Bell : Yes, (6) _____ (I/ look) after the hens.

Reporter : What did you do in the evenings?

Mrs. Bell : After dinner, (7) _____ (we/ gather) round my grandfather to listen to his stories. At the time, (8) _____ (we/ have) few games to play.

V. Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

Ex: I was very tired, so I went (go) to bed early.

Mrs. Trang didn't go (go) to work yesterday. She wasn't feeling well.

1. It stopped raining, so I _____ (take) off my raincoat.
2. The novel wasn't very interesting. I _____ (enjoy) it very much.
3. We went to Kate's house but she _____ (be) at home.

4. She was in a hurry, so she _____ (have) time to phone you.
5. The story was very funny but nobody _____ (laugh)
6. Tom was very hungry. He _____ (eat) like a horse.
7. The room was so cold, therefore we _____ (sleep) well.
8. It was hard work carrying the bags. They _____ (be) very heavy.
9. The window was open and a bird _____ (fly) into the room.
10. It was very hot, so I _____ (turn) on the air-conditioner.

VI. Put the verb in the correct form.

1. Lisa _____ to work yesterday. She wasn't feeling well. (not/ go)
2. It _____ very much in summer. (not/ rain)
3. Most people _____ to swim when they are child. (learn)
4. Listen to those people. What language _____? (they/ talk)
5. The moon _____ round the earth in about 27 days. (go)
6. Wolfgang A. Mozart _____ more than 600 pieces of music. (write)
7. We used _____ in a small village, but now we _____ in London. (live)
8. That bag looks heavy. I _____ you with it. (help)
9. It's her birthday. She _____ a meal with her friends. (have)
10. The letter _____ a few days ago. (come)

VII. Complete the sentences with prepositions of time: *in, at, on, after, before, between*.

Ex: I'll see you in the evening.

1. Mozart was born _____ Salzburg _____ 1756.
2. What do you usually do _____ Sunday? ~ We often go for long walks in the country _____ weekends.
3. They got married _____ 21 April 2002.
4. I'm usually free _____ 8 pm and 10 pm.
5. The course begins _____ 12 May and ends sometime _____ August.
6. She doesn't like travelling _____ night.
7. I'll leave _____ 7 o'clock, so you should call me _____ 7.
8. My English class finishes _____ 7.30. Let's meet _____ 7.30.
9. Do you give each other presents _____ Christmas?
10. There are usually a lot of parties _____ New Year's Eve.

VIII. Write questions of the conversation. Use the cue words in brackets.

Nam is asking Ba about his recent holiday.

Nam: Where did you go? (where/ go?)

Ba : I went to Nha Trang.

Nam: (1) _____ (go/ alone?)

Ba : No, I didn't. I went with my parents.

Nam: (2) _____ (how/ travel?)

Ba : We travelled by train.

Nam: (3) _____ (how long/ stay there?)

Ba : We stayed there for a week.

Nam: (4) _____ (stay/ at a hotel?)

Ba : Yes, we did. We stayed at Thang Loi Hotel.

Nam: (5) _____ (what/ do/ morning?)

Ba : In the early mornings, I went to the beach to swim and sunbathe.

Nam: (6) _____ (the weather/ fine?)

Ba : Yes. The weather was fine in the morning, but sometimes it rained in the evening.

Nam: (7) _____ (food/ good?)

Ba : Yes. The food was delicious, especially sea food. But they were quite expensive.

Nam: (8) _____ (buy/ souvenirs/ Nha Trang?)

Ba : Yes, I did. I bought some gifts for you and our friends.

Nam: (9) _____ (tired/ the trip?)

Ba : No, I wasn't. I had a great time.

IX. Complete the passage with the most suitable words.

The cook stole a leg from a beautiful toast stork just (1)_____ it was served to the king. The king asked him angrily (2)_____ the bird had only one leg. The cook replied "Storks only ever have (3)_____ leg. Come to the river with me tomorrow (4)_____ I will show you, your majesty". Next morning the cook and the king went down (5)_____ the river and (6)_____ the stocks all standing on one leg. The king clapped his (7)_____ and the birds flew (8)_____. "There" he said "You see, they all have (9)_____ legs the moment I clap". "But your majesty. You (10)_____ clap last night."

TEST FOR UNIT 4

I. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. married | b. harvest | c. appear | d. village |
| 2. a. electricity | b. equipment | c. traditional | d. unfortunate |
| 3. a. buffalo | b. wisdom | c. magical | d. upset |
| 4. a. modern | b. decide | c. excite | d. escape |
| 5. a. foolish | b. remember | c. greedy | d. daughter |

II. Choose the right words or phrases to fill in the blanks.

- _____ is a story passed on in spoken form from one generation to the next.
a. Novel b. Fiction c. Folktale d. Legend
- I _____ tennis a lot, but I don't play very often now.
a. used to play b. was playing c. am used to play d. play
- The office will be closed _____ Christmas and New Year.
a. at b. before c. between d. after
- My mother used to live _____ a farm when she was young.
a. in b. at c. during d. on
- My grandma _____ us when my parents were away from home.
a. looked for b. looked after c. looked at d. looked up
- They wanted to know _____ early?
a. why she left b. why did she leave c. when she left d. where she left

7. My father _____ us to the zoo when he was alive.
a. use to take b. used to taking c. used to take d. was used to taking
8. Oh, that's nice! Where _____ it?
a. do you buy b. will you buy c. did you buy d. you buy
9. She feels _____ that we didn't tell her the truth.
a. cruel b. greedy c. upset d. happy
10. Ian _____ in Scotland for ten year. Now he lives in London.
a. lived b. used to live c. was living d. has lived

III. Complete the passage with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

THE ANT AND THE PIGEON

An ant (1)_____ (go) down to a brook to drink. A wave (2)_____ (knock) him over and he nearly drowned. At the moment, a pigeon (3)_____ (fly) overhead with a twig in her beak. She (4)_____ (see) the ant drowning in the brook and (5)_____ (drop) the twig to him. The ant (6)_____ (climb) onto the twig and was saved. Then a hunter (7)_____ (throw) a net over the pigeon and was about to pull it tight. The ant (8)_____ (crawl) up to the hunter and (9)_____ (bite) his leg. The hunter (10)_____ (cry) out with pain and dropped the net. Out (11)_____ (soar) the pigeon and (12)_____ (fly) away.

IV. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. When the _____ failed, he struck the match to find the candles. (electric)
2. Our life is much better with the help of modern _____. (equip)
3. All the dancers wore _____ costumes. (tradition)
4. My uncle is an _____ engineer. (electrify)
5. _____, I lost my keys on the way home. (fortunate)
6. She was _____ enough to believe him. (fool)
7. A fairy _____ changed Little Pea's rags into beautiful clothes. (magic)
8. Everyone was very _____ after hearing that news. (excite)
9. Her father soon died of a _____ heart. (break)
10. You made a wise _____ when you chose to study Spanish. (decide)

V. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. Why you call me so late last night?
A B C D
2. What do you use to do when you felt afraid?
A B C D
3. If you don't feel well, you ought to not go to school today.
A B C D
4. Rick left class early because he used to have a headache.
A B C D
5. Did she leave a message after she went?
A B C D

VI. Match the question in column A with the answer in column B.

A

1. What was life like then?
2. What did you do in your free time?
3. Why didn't you go to school?
4. When did you start work?
5. How did your parents earn their living?

B

- a. Just about ten years old.
- b. Very hard. In those day we didn't used to have electricity.
- c. Wandered the fields, flied kites or played games.
- d. Because I had to look after my younger bothers and sisters.
- e. By farming.

VII. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answer.

Long long time ago, there was a king in Tibet who loved to eat fish. His love for fish was so great that he could eat almost nothing if there was no fish on the table.

It happened one year that there was no rain. Month after month, there was less and less water in the river, and less and less fish, until there was no fish at all, even for the king. The king could not eat anything. He sent men to all the fishermen's villages in the coutry to announce that the man who brought fish to the king's table could have any reward he asked for.

Some time passed and a poor fisherman appeared in front of the king's palace, carrying a tremendous fish. When the guard at the gate saw the fish, he asked the fisherman to give it to him. Needless to say, the fisherman did not egree and insisted on giving the fish to the king himself. The guard finally greed to let him go on the condition that the fisherman had to give him half of his reward.

After the fisherman met the king, the king asked him what he wanted for the reward. Surprisingly, the fisherman aksed for a thousand blows and he shared his reward to the guard at the gate. This gave the guard a lesson about being dishonest.

1. What was special about the king in Tibet?
 - a. He ate a lot of fish in his meal.
 - b. He ate only fish in his meal.
 - c. He could eat nothing but fish.
 - d. It was difficult for him to have a meal without fish.
2. What happened to the country?
 - a. There was no rain, so there was no water
 - b. There wasn't water in the rivers.
 - c. There was no rain and there were no fish at all.
 - d. There were no rivers so there were not a lot of fish.
3. What did the king do when there was no fish?
 - a. He asked his fishermen to look for fish.
 - b. He sent his men to villages to look for fish.
 - c. He offered a reward for fish.
 - d. He moved to fishermen's village to live

4. Why did a poor fisherman come to the palace?
 - a. Because he wanted the king's reward.
 - b. Because he wanted to see the king.
 - c. Because he wanted to see the palace.
 - d. Because he had a fish to bring to the king's table.
5. Why did the fisherman ask for blows as his reward?
 - a. Because he wanted to teach the king a lesson.
 - b. Because he wanted to teach the guard a lesson.
 - c. Because he liked blows.
 - d. Because he wanted to make the king angry.

VIII. Write the sentences, using the cue words.

1. We/ not go/ school/ Saturdays.

2. They/ usually/ hold/ party/ New Year's Eve.

3. I/ going/ see/ Joanna/ lunchtime.

4. Last night/ she/ come home/ 10. 30 and 11 o'clock.

5. Jazz/ become/ popular/ United States/ the 1920s.

6. I/ call/ you/ Friday afternoon/ about 2.30.

7. The first man/ walk/ moon/ 21 July 1969.

8. I/ used/ stay/ farm/ grandparents/ parents.

TEST YOURSELF

I. PRONUNCIATION

A. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. <u>t</u> iger | b. w <u>i</u> fe | c. w <u>i</u> sdom | d. f <u>i</u> re |
| 2. a. nam <u>e</u> d | b. liv <u>e</u> d | c. us <u>e</u> d | d. wash <u>e</u> d |
| 3. a. gr <u>e</u> at | b. pl <u>e</u> ase | c. gr <u>e</u> edy | d. r <u>e</u> ach |
| 4. a. fl <u>o</u> or | b. ch <u>o</u> ose | c. ch <u>o</u> re | d. s <u>a</u> w |
| 5. a. y <u>o</u> ung | b. l <u>u</u> unch | c. en <u>o</u> ugh | d. h <u>u</u> mor |

B. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 6. a. magazine | b. telephone | c. volunteer | d. medicine |
| 7. a. sociable | b. reserved | c. generous | d. humorous |
| 8. a. delivery | b. equipment | c. electricity | d. experiment |
| 9. a. remember | b. understand | c. invent | d. exhibit |
| 10. a. festival | b. folktale | c. household | d. tradition |

II. VOCABULARY

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. She was born _____ June 26th, 1990.
a. of b. at c. on d. in
2. She was very interested _____ old folktales.
a. to b. at c. in d. on
3. You are not allowed to go _____ the museum without paying.
a. outside b. inside c. upstairs d. downstairs
4. I watched the movie *Romeo and Juliet*. At last they killed _____.
a. together b. each other c. themselves d. them
5. We don't see you enough. You _____ come and visit us more often.
a. must b. have to c. can d. should
6. Yesterday we watched television all evening _____ we didn't have anything to do.
a. when b. because c. while d. although
7. She was sent to the _____ after her parents died in an accident.
a. exhibition b. hospital c. university d. orphanage
8. _____ you like to come? -I'd love to.
a. What b. Do c. Would d. Will
9. It really _____ me when people forget to say thank you.
a. annoys b. destroys c. injures d. appears
10. We had a _____ fix our washing machine.
a. mechanic b. repairman c. engineer d. doctor

B. Use the correct word form of the word given in each sentence.

11. They formed a close _____ at school. (friend)
12. _____ students do their exercises _____. (care)
13. The population from the factory is a public _____. (dangerous)
14. It is always _____ to write down important points. (wisdom)
15. Every student was very _____ about the holiday. (excite)

III. GRAMMAR AND STRUCTURE

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. My mother _____ a long black hair when she was young.
a. has b. would have c. was having d. used to have
2. Robert _____ away two or three times a year.
a. is going usually b. is usually going c. usually goes d. goes usually
3. It's late. It's time _____ home.
a. we go b. we must go c. we should go d. we went
4. Don't let young children _____ alone near a busy road.
a. walk b. to walk c. walking d. to walking
5. We haven't got _____ on holiday at the moment.
a. money enough to go b. enough money to go
c. money enough for going d. enough money for going

6. We _____ to Ireland for our holiday last year.
a. go b. are going c. went d. gone
7. _____ tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
a. I'm not working b. I don't work
c. I won't work d. I'm not going to work
8. Do you enjoy _____ sports programs.
a. watch b. to watch c. watching d. in watching
9. I passed the exam and _____.
a. so Paul did b. so did Paul c. neither did Paul d. Paul did either
10. I don't understand this word. What _____?
a. does mean this word b. does this word mean
c. this word means d. means this word

B. Choose the underlined word or phrase that needs correcting.

11. He is enough strong to carry the heavy luggage.
A B C D
12. I'd like buying a new dictionary but I don't have enough money.
A B C D
13. I recently visited the school where I used to studying five years ago.
A B C D
14. My brother are going to study in New York next month.
A B C D
15. We used to see a movie called "King Kong" last summer.
A B C D

IV. READING COMPREHENSION

A. Choose the most suitable word to complete the passage.

(1)_____ in Scotland in 1847, Alexander Bell became interested very early (2)_____ methods of human communication. He was influenced by his father and grandfather, who (3)_____ years working with deaf people and those with faulty (4)_____. Bell's father even go so far as to develop a system of so-called "visible speech" for the (5)_____. He used sketches of the different (6)_____ of the lips and tongue. This science of visible speech (7)_____ the foundation of young Bell's knowledge of the mechanics of (8)_____ speech.

1. a. Bear b. Bearing c. To bear d. Born
2. a. to b. at c. on d. in
3. a. spent b. took c. arranged d. decided
4. a. speed b. speech c. voice d. sound
5. a. dead b. blind c. deaf d. sick
6. a. positions b. ways c. uses d. directions
7. a. found b. led c. had d. formed
8. a. man's b. human c. human's d. man

B. Read the passage then choose the best answer for each question.

Children's education is changing rapidly today. In the past, teachers made children sit still for hours. They made them memorize all sorts of things. In

other words, children had to go on repeating things until they knew them by heart. Today, many teachers wonder if it is possible to make children learn at all. They say you can only help them learn. They say you must let children learn and discover things for themselves.

9. How is children's education changing today?
a. quickly b. slowly c. small d. large
10. What did teacher make children do in the past?
a. stand in hours b. memorize everything
c. repeat their homework d. sit for days
11. Children in the past were made to learn everything _____.
a. by head b. by hand c. by hair d. by heart
12. Nowadays, many teachers say that they only _____.
a. give children more homework b. make children learn
c. help children learn d. teach children at home
13. Today, the modern learning method is _____.
a. letting children play computer games
b. making children read a lot of books
c. giving children less homework
d. letting children discover things for themselves

V. WRITING

A. Rewrite these sentences, begining with the word given.

1. I lived on a farm once, but I don't any more.
I used _____.
2. Mark is too young to ride his bike to school.
Mark isn't _____.
3. Nga enjoys listening to traditional stories.
Nga is _____.
4. Let's meet at the cafe corner.
Bao suggested _____.
5. Sao Mai movie theater is near Hoa's house.
Sao Mai movie theater is not _____.

B. Write sentences based on the given cues.

6. I/ used/ look after/ younger/ brother/ when/ parents/ go/ work//

7. we/ going/ see/ movie *Dream City*/ 7.00/ this evening//

8. Tam/ live/ 26 Tran Phu Street/ Ha Noi/ his grandparents//

9. Last week/ Tina/ break/ arm/ and/ have to/ go/ hospital//

10. Children/ ought/ spend/ free time/ play/ sports//

UNIT 5**STUDY HABITS****I. Match the word or phrase in column A to its definition or meaning in column B.****A.**

1. habit
2. report card
3. improve
4. proud
5. mother tongue
6. semester
7. pronounce

B.

- a. the language that one first learn to speak as a child.
- b. to become or make something better.
- c. one of the two periods of about 18 weeks that the school year is divided into.
- d. to say the sounds of letters or words.
- e. feeling or showing pride.
- f. something that you do often or regularly, often without thinking about it.
- g. a document written by a teacher giving details of a student's work in a school.

1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____

II. Choose the right word in brackets to complete each sentence.

1. Our team won the game because we played very well. (good/ well)
2. I tried on the shoes and they fitted me _____. (perfect/ perfectly)
3. He had an accident because he was driving too _____. (fast/ fastly)
4. Tom drove _____ along the narrow road. (careful/ carefully)
5. Do you usually feel _____ before examinations? (nervous/ nervously)
6. Her English is quite _____. (fluent/ fluently)
7. She fell and hurt herself _____. (bad/ badly)
8. You look _____! Are you all right? (terrible/ terribly)
9. He look at me _____ when I interrupted him. (angry/ angrily)
10. I always feel _____ when the sun is shining. (happy/ happily)

III. Complete these sentence. Put one of the adverbs formed from these adjectives.

quick clear patient careful fluent good lucky serious hard heavy

1. I can't see _____ without my glasses.
2. When I left work, it was raining _____.
3. Three people were _____ injured in a car crash.
4. I waited _____ in the traffic jam.
5. I drove _____ because the street conditions were bad.
6. He replied to my letter very _____.
7. I have to work _____ today.
8. I used to speak French _____, but I've forgotten it.
9. I did _____ in my driving test and passed first time.
10. I arrived late but _____ the meeting had been delayed.

IV. Give advice with *should* or *shouldn't*.

Ex: I'm feel sick. (see a doctor)

You should see a doctor.

1. Tim's Spanish pronunciation is so bad. (practice speaking more often)

2. I always have difficulty getting up. (go to bed so late)
3. Mai's room isn't interesting. (put some pictures on the walls)
4. What a beautiful view! (take a photograph)
5. My sister has a bad cold. (go to school)
6. Her parents was very kind to us. (write them a letter of thanks)
7. Mai is putting on a lot of weight. (eat too much fatty food)
8. My first semester report is not good. (study harder next semester)
9. Liz needs a change. (go away for a few day)
10. I've got a bad cough. (smoke)

V. Put a form of *have to* or *should* into each gap.

1. Your hair's too long. I think you _____ get it cut.
2. You smell, and you've got a cough. You _____ smoke.
3. I'm going to bed. I _____ be up early tomorrow.
4. I'd like to meet your best friend. You _____ invite him round.
5. I _____ tell my parents where I am, then they don't worry.
6. You _____ come with me if you don't want to. I'll go on my own.
7. If you need some help with your homework, you _____ go to the library.
8. You _____ tell lies. It's naughty.
9. Thanks for a lovely evening! We _____ go now or we will miss our bus.
10. If you've got a ticket, you _____ queue. You can go straight in.

VI. Put the following commands and requests into reported speech.

Ex: The teacher said to Tim, "Come into my office, please."

The teacher asked/ told Tim to come into her office.

1. Their mother said to them, "Don't make so much noise."
2. The traffic policeman said, "Show me your driving licence, please."
3. Mrs. Jackson said to Tim, " Could you give me a hand, please?"
4. The lifeguard said, "Don't swim out too far, boys."
5. Nam said to the taxi driver, "Please turn left at the first traffic light."

6. She said to her son, "Go straight upstairs and get into bed."
7. The policeman said, "Don't touch anything in the room."
8. Mary said to John, "Can you carry my suitcase, please?"
9. Mr Atkins said to David, "You musn't leave the door unlocked."
10. I said to my neighbors, "Would you mind turning the music down?"

VII. Yesterday morning Mr. Robinson was ill. He went to the doctor and the doctor gave him some advice. Report the doctor's advice.

Ex: "You should take a few days off."

The doctor said he should take a few days off.

1. "You should stay in bed for a few days."
2. "You should take these medicines every four hours."
3. "You ought to keep your body warm."
4. "You shouldn't drink alcohol or smoke."
5. "You ought not to eat fatty food."
6. "You should take a little hot milk before sleeping."
7. "You shouldn't stay up late at night."
8. "You should stop smoking right now."

VIII. Put these sentences into directed speech.

Ex: I told Tim to hurry up. → *"Hurry up!" I said to Tim.*

1. The teacher asked Susan to go to the blackboard.
2. He told me not to leave the door open.
3. My mother asked me to help her with that heavy box.
4. Mrs. Jackson said Tim should improve his Spanish pronunciation.
5. They asked their mother not to worry about them.
6. Nam's mother advised him not to drive too fast.

7. The policeman told me to move my car.

8. The doctor said I should stay in bed for a few days.

IX. Supply the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. Hoa's teacher wants her _____ (spend) more time on Math.
2. I promise I _____ (try) my best next semester.
3. Sandra needs _____ (improve) her English writing.
4. They didn't try _____ (learn) all new words they _____ (come) across.
5. You should _____ (underline) the word you want _____ (learn).
6. Can you help me _____ (move) this table?
7. Nam always _____ (get) grade A for Physics, but last semester he _____ (get) B. So Nam's teacher asked him _____ (study) harder this semester.
8. They were proud of _____ (be) so successful.
9. He asked me _____ (not wait) for him.
10. You should _____ (practice) your English more often.

X. Fill in each blank with a suitable preposition.

1. Please wait _____ me a few minutes.
2. You can use dictionary to find _____ new words.
3. They are very proud _____ their new house.
4. My sister is not very good _____ Math.
5. Tim should work harder _____ his Spanish pronunciation.
6. Do you believe _____ ghosts?
7. Try to learn the meaning of new words _____ heart.
8. I got good grade _____ English and history.
9. How much time do you spend _____ English?
10. Some learners write the meaning of new words _____ their mother tongue.

XI. Read the passage, then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

Learning a language is, in some ways, like learning how to fly or play the piano. There some differences, but there is a very important similarity. It is this: learning how to do such things needs lots of practice. It is never enough simply to "know" something. You must be able to "do" things with what to know. For example, it is not enough simply to read a book on how to fly an aeroplane. A book can give you lots of information about how to fly, but if you only read a book and then try to fly without a great deal of practice first, you will crash and kill yourself. The same is true of learning the piano or learning a foreign language. Can you speak English well without having lots of practice? "Practice makes perfect" is what every learner of a foreign language should know.

1. Learning a foreign language and learning to fly are the same in an important way.
2. Information about flying from books is enough for someone to fly.

3. It is dangerous to try to fly without any real practice.
4. Talking to a native speaker can be a good way to speak English well.
5. Language learners can make their English perfect without practice.

TEST FOR UNIT 5

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. <u>prou</u> d | b. <u>hou</u> r | c. <u>y</u> our | d. <u>sou</u> nd |
| 2. a. <u>ton</u> gue | b. <u>wo</u> rd | c. <u>co</u> me | d. <u>lo</u> ve |
| 3. a. <u>h</u> our | b. <u>h</u> ouse | c. <u>h</u> eart | d. <u>h</u> ow |
| 4. a. <u>promi</u> se | b. <u>revi</u> se | c. <u>stic</u> k | d. <u>visi</u> t |
| 5. a. <u>nee</u> d | b. <u>rea</u> d | c. <u>reall</u> y | d. <u>tea</u> ch |

II. Choose the right words or phrases to fill in the blanks.

1. She asked her children _____.
a. to stop playing b. stop to play c. stop playing d. to stop to play
2. People _____ think that the world was flat.
a. get used to b. didn't use to c. used to d. are used to
3. His parents are always proud _____ him.
a. about b. of c. on d. with
4. I know you worked really _____ this semester.
a. hardly b. harder c. hardest d. hard
5. She grew up in Spain, so her _____ is Spanish.
a. mother tongue b. first language c. foreign language d. a and b
6. John _____ an old school friend in the street this morning.
a. carried on b. got along c. came across d. turned off
7. She advised me _____ late.
a. to not be b. not to be c. not be d. not being
8. He does morning exercises regularly _____ improve his health.
a. in order for b. so as to c. so that d. in order that
9. His doctor said he _____ in bed that week.
a. will stay b. has to stay c. can stay d. should stay
10. The movie was so _____ that we couldn't sleep last night.
a. excite b. exciting c. excited d. excitedly

III. Complete the passage with the suitable words in the box.

take	not	increase	own	special	need	words	which
------	-----	----------	-----	---------	------	-------	-------

In the twentieth century with the remarkable (1)_____ in scientific and other knowledge, (2)_____ dictionaries have to be made for a group of (3)_____. There are some very large dictionaries (4)_____ contain all the words in the English language, but they are (5)_____ convenient to use. They are too heavy and (6)_____ up too much room.

Students of a foreign language (7) _____ a dictionary which contains all the words in common use in their (8) _____ language and the ones they are trying to learn.

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct word form.

1. What is the correct _____ of this word? (pronounce)
2. There is room for further _____ in your English. (improve)
3. My grandmother can read _____ without glasses. (good)
4. She actively _____ in social work. (participation)
5. Last year we had an _____ summer holiday. (enjoy)
6. He was _____ of his achievements in the field of politics. (pride)
7. You'd better do some _____ for the final exams. (revise)
8. The _____ of the project made me tense. (important)
9. This grammar book is _____ both for classroom use and for independent study. (suit)
10. It's a very simple question. You can _____ answer it. (easy)

V. Choose the word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. They often used go to the library when they studied in London.
A B C D
2. I finished to do my homework quickly last night.
A B C D
3. She cried hardly when she failed her English test.
A B C D
4. She asked we to write new words on pieces of paper.
A B C D
5. He offered to help me in a very loudly voice.
A B C D
6. Some learners write example sentences with each new word in order remember how to use the word.
A B C D
7. Language learners should trying different ways of learning words.
A B C D
8. When I'll arrive in Hue, I'll send you a postcard.
A B C D
9. Tom had to do his homeworks again because he made so many mistakes.
A B C D
10. My mother told me to spend more time playing sports and don't spend much time on watching TV.
A B C D

VI. Read the passage, then choose the correct answer

Many people now think that teachers give students too much homework. They say that it is unnecessary for children to work at home in their free time.

Moreover, they argue that most teachers do not properly plan the homework tasks they give to students. The result is that students have to repeat tasks which they have already done at school.

Most people agree that homework is unfair. A student who can do his homework in a quiet and comfortable room is in a much better position than a student who does his homework in a small, noisy room with the television on. Some parents help their children with their homework. Other parents take no interest at all in their children's homework.

It is important, however, that teachers talk to parents about homework. A teacher should suggest suitable tasks for parents to do with their children. Parents are often better at teaching their own children!

1. According to the writer, _____
 - a. many parents would like their children to have less homework.
 - b. homework is unnecessary for children.
 - c. students should do a lot of work in their leisure time.
 - d. teachers used to give their students less homework
2. According to many parents, _____
 - a. most homework is difficult
 - b. their children have to plan the homework tasks.
 - c. most teachers do not properly plan the homework tasks
 - d. most teachers give old homework
3. Students _____
 - a. can do their homework better in a quiet room.
 - b. can not do their homework without their parents' help.
 - c. can do their homework better in a noisy room.
 - d. do not have any homework now.
4. Only a small number of people _____
 - a. can help their children with their homework.
 - b. take interest in their children's homework.
 - c. agree that homework is unnecessary.
 - d. think that homework is fair.
5. According to the passage, teachers should _____
 - a. advise parents about how to work together with their children at home.
 - b. plan the homework tasks more carefully.
 - c. allow students to stay at school to do their homework.
 - d. not give their students too much homework.

VII. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

1. 'Try your best to improve your pronunciation, Tim,' Miss Jackson said.
Miss Jackson asked _____
2. I learn English so that I can communicate with foreigners.
I learn English so as _____
3. 'Don't make so much noise,' my father said.
My father told _____

4. They are good teacher at Maths.
They teach _____
5. He actively participates in outdoor activities.
He is _____
6. 'You should practice speaking English every day,' said my teacher.
My teacher said _____
7. We intend to join in an English club.
We are _____
8. The word is so difficult that we can't spell it
It's such _____
9. It's necessary to revise new words regularly.
You _____
10. The film's ending is dramatic.
The film _____

UNIT 6

THE YOUNG PIONEERS CLUB

I. Find suitable words to complete the sentences. The first letter is given.

1. He is unable to see. He is a *b*_____ man.
2. Peter and Susan can neither speak nor hear. They are *h*_____ children.
3. Please fill in an *a*_____ *f*_____ if you want to join the club.
4. A person who is travelling or visiting a place for pleasure is a *t*_____.
5. A man working in business is a *b*_____.
6. A school which educates girls and boys together is *c*_____ school.
7. A doctor usually works in the *h*_____.
8. Britain's *n*_____ *r*_____ include coal, oil and gas.

II. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box, using the correct form of the verbs.

participate enrol care draw recycle sign encourage raise

1. She cares for babies.
2. Please _____ your name here.
3. They held a fashion show to _____ funds for the poor.
4. Don't _____ bad habits in a child.
5. They are interested in _____ in Sea Games 22.
6. She likes _____ portraits with a pencil.
7. They _____ glass from old bottles.
8. We refused _____ him as a member of the club.

III. Choose the correct forms of the verbs.

1. My father used to smoke/ smoking a packet of cigarettes a day.
2. Please stop to ask/ asking me questions!

3. I'm used to to work/ working with the television on.
4. She hopes to have/ having a suitable job.
5. He enjoys to get/ getting up late on Sunday mornings.
6. They are thinking of to move/ moving to America.
7. You don't need to come/ coming to the meeting.
8. Does she want to become/ becoming a singer?
9. My sister dislikes to do/ doing the ironing.
10. It's very difficult to reach/ reaching a decision.

IV. Put the verb into the correct form.

1. Stop _____ (argue) and start _____ (work).
2. I like _____ (think) carefully about things before _____ (make) a decision.
3. Ask him _____ (come) in. Don't keep him _____ (stand) at the door.
4. Don't forget _____ (lock) the door before _____ (go) to bed.
5. Did you succeed in _____ (solve) the problem? Let me _____ (suggest) some solutions.
6. Does your jacket need _____ (wash)? ~ No. But you need _____ (iron) it.
7. I prefer _____ (walk) to _____ (ride).
8. Don't try _____ (persuade) me. Nothing can make me _____ (change) my mind.
9. It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed _____ by the sea again. (be)
10. I don't mind _____ (walk) home, but I'd rather _____ (get) a taxi.

V. Complete the sentences using the present simple tense of the verbs.

1. _____ (the film/ begin) at 3.30 or 4.30?
2. The art exhibition _____ (open) on 3 May and _____ (end) on 15 July.
3. The train _____ (leave) Plymouth at 11.30 and _____ (arrive) in London at 14.45.
4. We _____ (start) our work on Monday and _____ (finish) on Thursday.
5. I'm bored with this TV program. When _____ (it/ finish)?
6. "What time _____ (your train/ leave) tomorrow?"
"Seven o'clock in the morning. It _____ (get) into Paris at eleven."
7. Next Friday _____ (be) thirteenth.
8. "Where _____ (they/ collect) garbage?" "At Dong Xuan market."
9. "What time _____ (you/ finish) your work tomorrow?"
10. My train _____ (leave) at 11.30, so I need _____ (be) at the station by 11.15.

VI. Put the verbs into the present progressive or present simple.

- Emma: (1) _____ (you/ do) anything tonight?
- Matthew: Yes, (2) _____ (I/ go) to the station to meet my friend Richard. (3) _____ (he/ stay) here for the weekend, remember? His train (4) _____ (get) in at eight fifteen.

- Emma: Oh, I'd forgotten about that.
- Matthew: Maybe we'll see you later. What (5) _____ (you/ do) tonight?
- Emma: Well, (6) _____ (I/ go) to the cinema with Vicky. The film(7) _____ (finish) quite early so (8) _____ (we/ go) to a pizza place afterwards.

VII. Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.

- It's very kind _____ you to say so.
- In this respect, French differs _____ English.
- Don't you care _____ your country's future?
- Please fill _____ this form.
- She enjoys participating _____ raising funds for the poor.
- Could you help me _____ the clean-up?
- Are you going to take part _____ this contest?
- This restaurant is famous _____ its Chinese dishes.
- I'm enrolling _____ the activities for this summer.
- They collect and empty garbage _____ Dong Xuan Market _____ January 9.

VIII. Complete the dialogues to ask for favor or to offer assistance. The expressions in the box can help you.

Can/ Could you help me, please?	Of course./ Certainly./ Sure.
Could you do me a favor?	I'm sorry. I'm really busy.
Can/ Could you ...?	What can I do for you?
I need/ want ...	How can I help you?
May I help you?	Yes/ No. Thank you.
Do you need any help?	Yes. That's very kind of you
Let me help you.	No, thank you. I'm fine

Ex: Nga: Could you do me a favor, please?

Hoa: Sure. What can I do for you?

Nga: Could you turn the TV on?

Hoa: Certainly. I'll do it for you.

- A. Nam's mother: (1) _____ me, Nam?
- Nam: Sure, Mom. (2) _____ for you?
- Nam's mother: (3) _____ some potatoes. (4) _____ them for me?
- Nam: (5) _____. I'll go and buy soon.
- B. Minh: Oh! It's too high.
- Librarian: Do (1) _____?
- Minh: Yes. (2) _____ help _____ get that book? It's too high.
- Librarian: No problem. Here (3) _____ are.
- Minh: Thanks. (4) _____ of you.

- C. Mrs. Thanh: (1) _____ a favor, please?
 Ba: Sure. How (2) _____?
 Mrs. Thanh: Can (3) _____ my suitcase? It's too heavy.
 Ba: (4) _____. I'll help you.
 Mrs. Thanh: (5) _____ you.
- D. Lan: Let (1) _____ with the washing-up.
 Hoa: (2) _____. I can do it by myself.
- E. Salesgirl: May (1) _____?
 Mrs. Robinson: Yes. (2) _____ to buy some vegetables.
 (3) _____ to the vegetables stall?
 Salesgirl: Of (4) _____. Go straight ahead. It's on your right.
 Mrs. Robinson: Thank you. (5) _____ of you.

IX. Read the passage, then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

SAVE THE WORLD

We are all destroying the Earth. The seas and rivers are too dirty to swim in. There is so much smoke in the air that it is unhealthy to live in many of world's cities. We have cut down so many trees that there are now vast areas of wasteland all over the world. As a result, farmers in parts of Africa can not grow enough to eat. In certain countries in Asia there is too little rice. Wild animals are quickly disappearing. For instance, tigers are rare in India now because we have killed too many. However, it isn't enough simply to talk about the problem. We must act now before it is too late to do anything about it. Join us now. Save the Earth. This is too important to ignore.

- wasteland: *đất khô cằn; hoang mạc*

- rare: *hiếm, rất ít*

- ignore: *lờ đi*

1. The seas and rivers are polluted now.
2. Smoke is harmful to human health.
3. We have planted many trees recently.
4. Wild animals are threatened by extinction.
5. There are only a few tigers exist in India.
6. Save the Earth is an unimportant problem.

X. Use the cue words to make each sentence in the letter.

Dear Tim,

I/ glad/ tell/ you/ I/ going/ join/ Y&Y Green Group.

We/ having/ environment month.

We/ going/ clean/ streets/ weekends.

We/ going/ plant trees and flowers/ in the school garden/ water/ every afternoon/ class.

We/ also/ planting/ young trees/ plants/ sell/ other schools.

I/ hope/ we/ give/ more green color/ city/ earn some money/ school Y&Y.

It/ interesting/ useful/ isn't it?

Write/ me/ soon/ tell/ all your news.

Love,
Hoa

TEST FOR UNIT 6

I. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

1. a. enroll b. summer c. hobby d. favor
2. a. activity b. community c. participate d. citizenship
3. a. popular b. business c. America d. personal
4. a. encourage b. voluntary c. assistance d. resources
5. a. environment b. excellent c. interesting d. character

II. Choose the most suitable words or phrases to fill in the blanks.

1. It's too cold outside. _____ close the door, please?
a. Do you b. Would you mind c. Can you d. Why don't you
2. She is studying hard _____ the final exams.
a. but for passing b. in order to pass c. so as pass d. so that she pass
3. Most people enjoy _____ to different parts of the world.
a. to travel b. travel c. traveled d. traveling
4. It is really interesting, _____?
a. does it b. isn't it c. doesn't it d. is it
5. We _____ to the movie tonight. The film _____ at 7.30.
a. will go - will begin b. are going - will begin
c. go - begins d. are going - begins
6. You should walk on the _____.
a. sidewalk b. street c. avenue d. road
7. The doctor advised him _____ a rest and _____ any heavy work.
a. to take - to do b. to take - not do
c. to take - don't do d. to take - not to do
8. I need some help with this table. _____ you lift the other end?
a. May b. Should c. Could d. Shall
9. It's lunch time. Let's stop _____ lunch.
a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
10. "May I help you?" - "_____"
a. What can I do for you? b. I'm afraid I'm busy now.
c. Yes. That's very kind of you. d. How can I help?

III. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. The World Health _____ is an international one. (organize)
2. The first World _____ Festival was held in Prague in 1947. (young)
3. Fishing is an _____ my father enjoys best. (act)
4. We will interview only three _____ for the job. (apply)
5. Because of the _____ of her teachers, she decided to study law. (encourage)
6. Children need to have a good _____. (educate)
7. He should say a few words of _____. (explain)
8. Charities rely on _____ contributions. (volunteer)
9. We should save _____ resources. (nature)
10. They collected over 1000 _____ for the petition. (sign)

IV. Make questions for the underlined words.

1. They join in Spring Activities program.

2. They plant and water trees along the streets on weekends.

3. They collect and empty garbage at Ben Thanh Market.

4. They help the elderly and the street children.

5. They help the community by participating in recycling program.

6. They start their work at 7 am and finish at 5 pm.

7. They collect used glass, paper and cans for recycling.

8. They hope to give more green to the city and earn more money for their school.

V. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answer.

Education for Development (EFD) is a small international organization that was set up in 1996 by a Swiss and a Belgian volunteer who were teaching English to children on the street.

EFD believes education improves the quality of life for disadvantaged children. The organization has since increased its scope and number of activities, and developed into a dynamic and multicultural team of staff and volunteers. EFD strengthens and empowers local Social organizations enabling them to improve and expand their educational services for disadvantaged children. The aim of the organization is to get disadvantaged children into mainstream education. They achieved positive results in various fields (for example: cooking classes, English classes, etc) and they continue to improve and expand their services.

- EFD was established in 1996 by _____.
 - a Swiss volunteer
 - a Belgian volunteer
 - a voluntary organisation
 - Both a and b
- The organization provides _____.
 - children on the street
 - education to children on the street
 - comfortable life for disadvantaged children
 - number of activities
- _____ can improve the quality of life for disadvantaged children.
 - Education
 - EFD
 - Service
 - Local Social Organization
- The word "scope" means _____.
 - development
 - education
 - potential
 - aim
- A volunteer is a person who does a job _____.
 - such a high salary for it
 - as a social worker
 - with being paid for it
 - without being paid for it

VI. Write sentence with the cue given.

- Please/ take/ form/ your teacher/ and/ ask/ her/ sign.

- Can/ you/ show/ way/ nearest/ post office?

- We/ going/ plant/ flowers/ parks/ water/ afternoon/ class.

- We/ hope/ give/ more/ green/ color/ city/ earn/ money/ our organization

- Yesterday/ he/ promise/ take part/ recycling program

- My brother/ very good/ repair/ household/ appliances

UNIT 7

MY NEIGHBORHOOD

I. Find the name of these places.

Ex: rantaurest restaurant

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------|------------------|-------|
| 1. umstadi | _____ | 5. dreshairser's | _____ |
| 2. gsdrureto | _____ | 6. rycegro tores | _____ |
| 3. inswimmg lopo | _____ | 7. tosp ceioff | _____ |
| 4. etw etkrma | _____ | 8. oppshing aml | _____ |

II. Complete the sentences with the suitable places above.

Ex: That restaurant serves Hue food.

- Mrs. Thanh went to the _____ to buy some fish.
- Please go to the _____ and get me some sugar.

3. Susan is going to the _____ to get her hair cut.
4. Nam wants to buy a birthday present. He'll go to the _____ tonight.
5. Minh has a headache. He is going to the _____ to get some medicines.
6. Mrs. Kim is at the _____ now. She wants to send a parcel to Ha Noi.
7. The children are playing football in the _____ in their neighborhood.
8. What hot weather! Let's go to the _____.

III. Complete the sentences. Put *for* or *since* into each gap.

Ex: I have known her for three days.

1. It has been raining _____ lunchtime.
2. My boss will go away _____ the next ten days.
3. I'm staying in England _____ a year.
4. She has lived in London _____ 1985.
5. Please hurry up! We have been waiting _____ an hour.
6. I have known her _____ January.
7. Nam's father has worked in this company _____ 20 years.
8. Have you learned English _____ a long time?
9. I haven't seen Tom _____ we left school.
10. The house is very dirty. We haven't cleaned it _____ ages.

IV. Write sentences with the cue words. Use the present perfect tense of the verbs.

Ex: I/ know/ her/ three months

I have known her for three months.

1. He/ have/ a cold/ a week.

2. They/ live/ in this house/ April.

3. My family/ be/ here/ Christmas.

4. We/ not see/ each other/ 10 years.

5. Mr. Clark/ work/ in the bank/ a long time.

6. Tom and Joanna/ go/ to France/ last summer.

7. My sister/ have/ a red bike/ yesterday.

8. I/ not eat/ in that restaurant/ ages.

9. Mr. Robinson/ teach/ in this school/ 1987.

10. I/ write/ this letter/ six o'clock.

V. Complete B's answers. Some sentences are positive and some are negative. Use the present perfect tense of the verbs in the box.

be eat read have meet play try see know

Ex: A: How is Ann these days?

B: I've no idea. I haven't met her for two months.

1. A: Who's that woman by the door?

B: I don't know. I _____ her before.

2. A: Are you hungry?

B: Yes. I _____ much today.

3. A: Can you play chess?

B: Yes, but I _____ for ages.

4. A: Did you enjoy your holiday?

B: Yes. It's the best holiday I _____ for a long time.

5. A: What's that book like?

B: Very interesting. I _____ it three times.

6. A: Is Paris an interesting place?

B: I've no idea. I _____ there.

7. A: Do you like spaghetti?

B: I don't know. I _____ it.

8. A: How well do you know him?

B: Very well. We _____ each other since we were children.

VI. Put in the present perfect or past simple of the verbs in brackets.

1. I _____ (do) all the housework. The flat is really clean now.

2. He _____ (write) a novel for two years, but he _____ (finish) it yet.

3. My brother _____ (leave) home 10 years ago. I _____ (never/ meet) him again since then.

4. What _____ you _____ (do) last weekend? _____ you _____ (play) golf?

5. I like your car. How long _____ you _____ (have) it?

6. Mai _____ (buy) a new dress last month but she _____ (not wear) it yet.

7. Mr. Quang _____ (teach) Math in this school since he _____ (graduate) from the university in 1989.

8. _____ you _____ (hear) of Agatha Christie? She _____ (be) a writer who _____ (die) in 1976. She _____ (write) more than 70 detective novels. _____ you _____ (read) any of them?

9. When I _____ (get) home last night, I _____ (be) very tired and I _____ (go) straight to bed.

10. Daneil _____ (earn) some money last week. But I'm afraid he _____ (already/ spend) it all.

VII. Read the situations and complete the sentences, using the words in brackets.

Ex: I'm quite tall but you are taller. (as ... as)

→ I'm not as tall as you.

1. Hoa and Tim are both 13 years old. (the same ... as)

Tim is _____ age _____.

2. She speaks English very well, and her sister speaks well too. (as ... as)
She speaks _____ her sister.
3. They like spaghetti; but I like hamburger. (different from)
Their tastes are _____.
4. They've lived here for a long time but we've lived here longer. (as ... as)
They haven't _____ us.
5. He is wearing a red cap, and she is wearing a red cap too. (like)
He is _____ hers.
6. My birthday is 12 August. Tom's birthday is 12 August. (the same as)
My birthday is _____ Tom's.
7. Sandra spent 100 dollars; but Susan spent 120 dollars. (as ... as)
Sandra _____ much money _____.
8. I thought she was intelligent girl; but she is so stupid. (different from)
She is _____ what _____.
9. Nam drives carefully, but his sister drive more carefully. (as... as)
Nam doesn't _____.
10. We left the meeting at 10 pm; they left the meeting at 10 pm too. (the same ... as)
We left _____ time _____.

VIII. Fill in the blanks with the suitable prepositions.

The Tran Phu Street residents and store owners are going to hold a meeting to discuss effects (1)_____ the new shopping mall. The meeting will be (2)_____ Binh's Hardware Store, 12 Hang Da Street, (3)_____ 8 pm (4)_____ 10 pm (5)_____ May 20. Please contact Pham Van Tai (6)_____ the above address (7)_____ more information.

IX. Complete the questions in column A.

- | A | B |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. How _____? | - Not bad. And you? |
| 2. How _____? | - I go shopping twice a week. |
| 3. What _____? | - I'm looking for a birthday present. |
| 4. How _____? | - It's twenty thousand dong. |
| 5. How _____? | - I've learned English for five years. |
| 6. Where _____? | - I went to the shopping mall. |
| 7. How _____? | - I came there by bus. |
| 8. How _____? | - It's about five kilometers. |

X. Choose the suitable word to complete the passage.

Our world is changing (1)_____. Every day we are going farther faster. Sixty years ago we didn't have airplanes, but today we are sending men into (2)_____. Every day we are sending news faster. Today a family in San Francisco can (3)_____ in its living room and watch a (4)_____ television program from Paris. And every day we are conquering more (5)_____. Less than ten years ago people feared the dreaded disease (6)_____ polio, but today powerful vaccines have (7)_____ wiped it out.

Our (8)_____ world is not always comfortable and secure. Many people don't like to change. They like the (9)_____ it is. Yet more changes are coming: Ten years (10)_____ now few people will live the way they are living.

- conquer: *chế ngự* - polio: *bệnh bại liệt* - wipe out: *tiêu diệt*

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. a. carefully | b. rapidly | c. hardly | d. slowly |
| 2. a. sky | b. area | c. universe | d. space |
| 3. a. place | b. stand | c. sit | d. lie |
| 4. a. live | b. living | c. life | d. lived |
| 5. a. sickness | b. diseases | c. illness | d. affections |
| 6. a. called | b. said | c. told | d. asked |
| 7. a. most | b. mostly | c. almost | d. hardly |
| 8. a. change | b. changed | c. changing | d. unchanged |
| 9. a. life | b. mean | c. method | d. way |
| 10. a. to | b. from | c. on | d. in |

TEST FOR UNIT 7

I. Choose the word that had the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others

- | | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. <u>match</u> | b. <u>mall</u> | c. <u>bank</u> | d. <u>hat</u> |
| 2. a. <u>price</u> | b. <u>tired</u> | c. <u>nice</u> | d. <u>humid</u> |
| 3. a. <u>cook</u> | b. <u>food</u> | c. <u>too</u> | d. <u>pool</u> |
| 4. a. <u>soccer</u> | b. <u>notice</u> | c. <u>photo</u> | d. <u>grocery</u> |
| 5. a. <u>meeting</u> | b. <u>cheap</u> | c. <u>weekend</u> | d. <u>weather</u> |

II. Choose the right words, phrases or sentences to fill in the blanks.

- They have studied _____ six o'clock.
a. in b. at c. since d. for
- My mother was _____ last night, so we went out for dinner.
a. tired enough to cook b. too tired to cook
c. very tired to cook d. tired for cooking
- The new shopping mall is quite _____ the present shopping area.
a. different from b. the same c. like to d. similar
- _____ have you lived in this town? - For nearly 20 years.
a. How much b. How many c. How far d. How long
- They _____ a holiday for ten years.
a. haven't had b. didn't had c. don't have d. aren't having
- Airmail is _____ expensive than surface mail.
a. the most b. the same c. as d. more
- It's two years since I last _____ Joe.
a. see b. saw c. have seen d. seeing
- Customers can shop in _____ in the new shopping mall in town.
a. concern b. convenience c. comfort d. community
- They're offering a 10% _____ on all sofas this month.
a. reward b. discount c. reduce d. cut

10. " _____ " - "It's 20.000 dong."

- a. How much is this parcel cost? b. How much does this parcel take?
c. How much is this parcel? d. How much does this parcel worth?

III. Complete the letter to a newspaper, using the present perfect or past simple of the verbs.

A few days ago I (1) _____ (learn) that someone plans to knock down the White Horse Inn. This pub (2) _____ (be) the center of village life for centuries. It (3) _____ (stand) at our crossroad for 500 years. It (4) _____ (be) famous in the old days, and Shakespeare once (5) _____ (stay) there, they say. I (6) _____ (live) in Brickfield all my life. The villagers (7) _____ (know) about the plans for a week and already there's a 'Save Our Pub' campaign. Last week we (8) _____ (be) happy, but this week we're angry. We will stop them, you'll see.

IV. Give the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. He is one of the best _____ in the world. (photograph)
2. Their first public _____ was not very successful. (perform)
3. The shoes were nice, but they were _____. (comfort)
4. Hoa and Nien used to be next-door _____. (neighborhood)
5. Surface mail is much _____ than airmail. (cheap)
6. I can't see him now; it's not _____. (convenience)
7. They are very busy with _____ the Teachers' Day. (celebrate)
8. Nam thinks the food in this restaurant is _____. (taste)
9. _____, I won't be able to attend the meeting. (fortunate)
10. There is a big _____ between the new shopping mall and the present shopping area. (differ)

V. Choose the word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. I'd like sending these postcards to America.
A B C D
2. The new shopping mall is quite different with the present shopping area.
A B C D
3. Shopping in the mall is more comfort than in the market.
A B C D
4. I've studied English since I've started high school.
A B C D
5. Patrick doesn't run quickly as Lee, but he can run farther.
A B C D
6. Everyone in the neighborhood are pleased with the new mall.
A B C D
7. My father has worked in that company since more than twenty years.
A B C D
8. Today seems as hotter as yesterday, but the humidity is lower.
A B C D
9. Is surface mail much more cheap than airmail?
A B C D

10. My uncle has lived in London for ten years, but now he lives in Bristol.

A

B

C

D

VI. Read the passage, then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

Since 1990s there has been an important change in Ho Chi Minh City - the growth of shopping centers, or shopping malls. Today we find many shopping centers on the main streets of residential areas. A large shopping center, or mall, usually has about 50 to 100 stores of all kinds and a large parking lot for vehicles. Most malls have two or more department stores that sell everything you can imagine - clothes, toys, cameras, sports equipments, etc. These department stores also sell furniture and household appliances. Some shopping centers have supermarket that sell food and a lot of things for the home. The other stores in a shopping center usually each sell only one kind of thing - cosmetics, books, shoes, clothes, music cassettes and CDs, etc. A shopping center often has one or more special restaurant that serves fast food.

People like malls for many reasons. They feel safe because malls have security guards. Parking is usually free, and the weather inside is always fine. They are offered a wide selection of products, so it's easy for them to find anything they need. Sometimes they will be offered special discounts or get promotions

1. More and more shopping centers have been built since 1990.
2. It's very difficult to find a park lot at a shopping center.
3. You cannot buy a washing machine or refrigerator in a shopping center.
4. You can have hamburgers or fried chickens in a shopping center.
5. It's more comfortable and convenient to shop in the mall than in the market.

VI. Write the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

1. The last time we saw her was on Christmas Day.

We haven't _____

2. I haven't eaten this kind of food before.

This is _____

3. It started raining an hour ago.

It has _____

4. We haven't visited my grandparents for two months.

The last time _____

5. I have studied English for three years.

I began _____

6. My brother hasn't seen his best friend for nearly five years.

It's _____

7. When did you start learning English?

How long _____

8. Jane is as tall as her older sister.

Jane is the same _____

9. These houses are not as large as those houses.

Those houses are _____

10. Your backpack is not the same as mine.

My backpack is _____

UNIT 8**COUNTRY LIFE AND CITY LIFE****I. Match each word in column A with its opposite in column B.**

A	B	
1. friendly	a. boring	1. <u>d</u>
2. quiet	b. dangerous	2. _____
3. big	c. ugly	3. _____
4. clean	d. unfriendly	4. _____
5. interesting	e. dry	5. _____
6. simple	f. small	6. _____
7. old	g. complex	7. _____
8. beautiful	h. dirty	8. _____
9. safe	i. new	9. _____
10. wet	j. noisy	10. _____

II. Complete the sentences with one suitable word in the box.

typhoon drought tragedy urban migrant traffic jam remote floods

- In the areas affected by _____, there is not enough water for people's need.
- The heavy rain has caused _____ in many parts of the country.
- A person who moves from one place to another to live or work is a _____.
- _____ is a tropical storm with strong winds.
- Many young farmers moved to the _____ areas for jobs.
- Some _____ areas in the country are getting electricity.
- We were stuck in a _____ for an hour.
- It's a _____ that so many young people are out of work.

III. Complete the dialogues. Put the verbs into the present progressive tense.

- A: Have you decided where to go for your holiday yet?
B: Well, _____ (I/ go/ Nha Trang)
- A: Shall we meet on Friday?
B: I can't on Friday. _____ (I/ have/ appointment/ dentist)
- A: Are you free at lunchtime tomorrow?
B: No, _____ (I/ have lunch/ Sue)
- A: _____? (What/ you/ have/ dinner?)
B: I don't know. I can't make up my mind.
- A: What's the weather like in Ha Noi?
B: _____ (The weather/ get/ warmer)
- A: What's your plan for this weekend?
B: _____ (I/ visit/ my grandparents/ their farm)
- A: _____ (What/ you/ do/ tonight?)
B: Well, _____ (I/ practice/ piano lessons).

8. A: Will you come to my party tomorrow?

B: I'm sorry I can't. _____ (I/meet/
Susan/ the airport).

IV. Put the verb into the more suitable form, present progressive or present simple.

1. I _____ (go) to the movies tonight. The film _____ (begin) at 7.30.

2. The world _____ (change) rapidly. Things _____ (never/
stay) the same.

3. We _____ (have) a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?

4. It _____ (often/ rain) in summer, but it _____ (not/
rain) now.

5. What time _____ this train _____ (get) to London?

6. Computers _____ (become) more important in our lives.

7. A: _____ (be) you free at lunchtime tomorrow?

B: No, I _____ (have) lunch with my parents.

8. Sue _____ (come) to see us tomorrow. She (travel)
_____ by train and her train _____ (arrive) at 10.15. I
_____ (meet) her at the station.

9. A: What _____ your sister _____ (do)?

B: She is an architect but she _____ (not work) at the moment.

10. Can we stop walking soon? I _____ (get) tired.

V. Which is correct?

1. I am a bit thirsty. I think I will have/ am going to have something to drink.

2. Why are you putting on your coat? Will you go/ Are you going somewhere?

3. Look! That plane flies/ is flying toward the airport. It is landing/ is going to land.

4. Do you think An will like/ is going to like the present we bought for her?

5. Do you do/ Are you doing anything tomorrow evening, Helen?

6. Are you still watching that program? What time does it end/ will it end?

7. I go/ am going to London next week for a wedding. My sister will get/ is getting married.

8. I'm not ready yet. I will tell/ am going to tell you when I am ready. I
promise I am not/ won't be very long.

9. "Where do you go/ are you going?" - "To the hairdresser's. I will have/ am going to have my hair cut.

10. Sue comes/ is coming to see us tomorrow. She travels/ is traveling by
train and her train arrives/ is arriving at 10.15.

VI. Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use comparative form (-er or more) with give adjectives.

Ex: I usually go to bed at 10.30. Last night I went to bed at 10. (early)

Last night I went to bed earlier than usual.

1. The CD is 20,000 dong, the cassette is 12, 000 dong. (expensive)

The CD _____

2. The church is built in 1878 and the library in 1925. (old)

The church _____

3. Andrew hasn't many friends. Clare has lots of friends. (popular)
Clare _____
4. The film lasts two and a half hours, but the videotape is only two hours long. (long)
The film _____
5. It takes four hours to go by car and five hours to go by train. (slow)
Going by train _____
6. Laura's room has a lot of pictures and flowers. Mark's room doesn't have any pictures. (interesting)
Laura's room _____
7. Daneil can lift 90 kilos, but Matthew can lift 120 kilos. (strong)
Matthew _____
8. There are a lot of vehicles on the streets in the city. There are a few vehicles on the streets in the countryside. (crowded)
The streets in the city _____
9. The buses run every 30 minutes. The trains run very hour. (frequent)
The buses _____
10. Yesterday the temperature was six degrees. Today it's only three degrees. (cold)
It _____

VII. Write sentences from the notes. Use the superlative form of the adjectives.

Ex: Mark/ tall/ person/ his family

Mark is the tallest person in his family.

1. This stadium/ modern / Europe

2. Melanie/ kind/ girl/ I know

3. What/ happy/ day/ your life

4. This Beatles album/ good/ they ever made

5. Asernal/ popular/ team/ England

6. This painting / valuable/ the gallery

7. Yesterday/ hot/ day/ the month

8. This watch/ one/ cheap/ you can buy

9. That/ boring/ film/ I/ ever/ see

10. It/ bad/ mistake/ I/ ever/ make

VIII. Write the comparative form or superlative form of the words in brackets.

1. Sport is _____ politics. (interesting)
2. Can't you think of anything _____ to say? (intelligent)

3. It's _____ day of the year. (short)
4. London is _____ Birmingham. (big)
5. I prefer this chair to the other ones. It's _____. (comfortable)
6. The weather is getting _____. (bad)
7. I like living in the countryside. It's _____ living in a town. (peaceful)
8. Who is _____ in the class? (clever)
9. That's _____ meal I've had for a long time. (delicious)
10. It was _____ speech I've ever heard. (boring)

IX. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

1. Richard is younger than he looks (old)
Richard isn't _____
2. This hotel is more comfortable than all the others. (most)
This hotel _____
3. The table and the desk are the same size. (big)
The table _____
4. I'm not as fit as my brother. (am)
My brother is _____
5. The dress is cheaper than the skirt. (expensive)
The skirt _____
6. The living-room isn't as big as the kitchen. (than)
The kitchen _____
7. I've never read a more interesting story. (most)
It's _____
8. No one in my class is as clever as John. (the)
John _____

X. Fill in each blank with a suitable preposition.

1. I'm interested _____ farming.
2. My grandmother prefers living in the countryside _____ living in the city.
3. He spent his whole life struggle _____ imperialism.
4. We've lived in this village _____ 30 years.
5. Hold _____ a minute while I get my breath back.
6. My parents are tired _____ living in the city.
7. Are you free _____ Sunday afternoon?
8. She's still looking _____ a job.
9. The increase in population has led _____ overcrowding in many cities.
10. My grandparents live _____ a farm, but my father has lived _____ the urban area since he was twenty.

XI. Complete the passage with the suitable words from the box.

services	neighbors	friends	polluted	advantages
isolated	hurry	which	means	environment

The country and the city have (1) _____ and disadvantages. People in the country live in more beautiful (2) _____. They enjoy peace and quiet,

and can do their work at their own pace because no one is in a (3)_____. They live in larger, more comfortable houses, and their 4)_____ are more friendly, and ready to help them when they need it. Their life can be monotonous and they can be (5)_____, a long way from the nearest town, (6)_____ is a serious problem if they are ill or have to take children to school.

The city has all the (7)_____ the country lacks, but it also has a lot of disadvantages. Cities are often ugly and (8)_____; they not only have bad air but are also noisy. Everyone is always in a haste and this (9)_____ that people have no time to get to know each other and make (10)_____.

TEST FOR UNIT 8

I. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

1. a. village b. relative c. facility d. countryside
2. a. permanently b. information c. electricity d. entertainment
3. a. beautiful b. expensive c. plentiful d. difficult
4. a. modern b. dirty c. remote d. peaceful
5. a. accessible b. definite c. neighborhood d. government

II. Choose the word or phrase that best to complete each of the sentence.

1. He went to school late because he was stuck in the _____ this morning.
a. rush-hour b. traffic-light c. traffic-jam d. cross-roads
2. Farmers often _____ other work when they need more money.
a. look for b. look at c. look after d. look over
3. Minh _____ in this town since 1987.
a. lives b. has lived c. lived d. is living
4. We _____ a party next Saturday. Can you come?
a. have b. will have c. are having d. are to have
5. Typhoons, floods or droughts can easily _____ a harvest.
a. destroy b. finish c. provide d. defeat
6. I often spend my weekends _____ through pleasant open countryside.
a. travel b. to travel c. to traveling d. traveling
7. Which one is _____, milk or orange juice?
a. better b. good c. the best d. well
8. Thank you! That's _____ I've ever received.
a. the nicer gift b. the nicest gift c. a nice gift d. nicest gift
9. Could you talk _____? I'm trying to work.
a. more quietly b. quieter than c. more quiet d. quiet
10. The countryside is _____ quiet _____ I don't want to live there permanently.
a. too/ that b. very/ until c. such/ that d. so/ that

III. Complete the passage with the suitable words.

Many (1)_____ believe that life on a farm is very quiet and easy, but (2)_____ is very hard. I myself have (3)_____ on a farm for nearly twenty years and I know what farm work (4)_____. You must get up early, (5)_____ the chickens and the cows, water the flowers, vegetables, do a (6)_____ of

gardening and then (7) _____ in the fields. But my aunt likes this way of life and (8) _____ do all her children.

IV. Use the correct word form of the word in brackets.

1. There is no _____ in the countryside. (entertain)
2. She has no parents or close _____. (relate)
3. People in the country are often more _____ than people in the city. (friend)
4. Farmers are always faced with _____ brought about by typhoons, floods or droughts. (destroy)
5. A lot of people believe that well-paying jobs are _____ in the city. (plenty)
6. Increased pollution is another _____ result. (please)
7. The air is heavily _____ with traffic fumes. (pollute)
8. They made a decision to close down the factory _____. (permanence)
9. Joyce think her hometown is a very _____ place. She really get _____ there. (bore)
10. The remote desert area is _____ only by helicopter. (access)

V. Match the questions in column A to the answers in column B.

A

1. What are you doing on your vacation?
 2. What is your home town like?
 3. Who live there?
 4. How far is it from here to your home?
 5. How do you usually get to your home?
 6. How often do you go to your home?
 7. Do you love your home town?
 8. Which one do you prefer: the country or the city?
1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____; 8. ____

B

- a. I usually travel by train.
- b. I'm not sure. I think it's about 850 kilometers.
- c. I'm going home.
- d. I prefer the country.
- e. Oh, yes. I really love it.
- f. It's a beautiful small village.
- g. My grandparents, my parents and my brothers.
- h. Twice a year.

VI. Read the passage, then answer the questions.

Many people who work in London prefer to live outside it, and to go into their offices, factories or schools every day by train, car or bus, even though this means they have to get up earlier in the morning and reach home later in the evening.

One advantage of living outside London is that houses are cheaper. Even a small flat in London without a garden costs quite a lot to rent. With the same money one can get a little house in the country with a garden of one's own. Then in the country one can rest from the noise and hurry of the town. Even though one has to get up earlier and spend more time in trains or buses, one can sleep well at night, and during weekends and summer evenings, one can enjoy the fresh, clean air of the country. If one likes gardens, one can spend one's free time digging, planting, watering and doing the one hundred and one other things that are needed in a garden. Then, when the flowers and the vegetables come up, one has the reward of one who has shared the secrets of Nature.

1. Where do most people who work in London prefer to live?
 - a. London
 - b. London's suburbs
 - c. London's towns
 - d. London's urban areas
2. Why do they have to get up early in the morning?
 - a. Because they have to catch the early train or bus.
 - b. Because they want to avoid traffic-jam.
 - c. Because they live far from train or bus station.
 - d. Because it often takes them a lot of time to get to their offices, factories or schools
3. What are the advantages of living outside London?
 - a. Houses are cheap
 - b. There's peace and quiet
 - c. Air is fresh
 - d. All are correct
4. The phrasal verb 'come up' means _____.
 - a. rise
 - b. happen
 - c. appear
 - d. reach
5. Which of the following is not true?
 - a. People in the country can sleep well.
 - b. People in the country usually spend their free time gardening.
 - c. People in the country get fresh air.
 - d. People in the country get peace and quiet.

VII. Write a complete letter from the given words and phrases (make changes and additions if necessary).

Dear Susan,

1. Thank you/ much/ your letter/ which/ arrive/ few days ago.

2. It/ be/ lovely/ hear/ you.

3. I/ be sorry/ I/ not write/ a long time/ but I/ be very busy.

4. As you know/ we/ buy/ new house/ September.

5. It/ be/ very bad condition/ and it/ need/ repair/ a lot.

6. We/ just / finish / most of it / and now / it / look / very nice.

7. Peter and I/ decide/ give/ house-warming party/ May 3rd

8. You think/ you able/ come?

9. Please give me/ ring/ and let/ know/ if you can come.

10. I/ really/ look forward/ see you again.

Love,
Jenny

TEST YOURSELF

I. PRONUNCIATION

A. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. a. definite | b. quiet | c. supplies | d. migrant |
| 2. a. country | b. scout | c. government | d. cousin |
| 3. a. helped | b. asked | c. increased | d. preferred |
| 4. a. character | b. school | c. teacher | d. chemistry |
| 5. a. earth | b. heart | c. earn | d. heard |

B. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 6. a. community | b. neighborhood | c. restaurant | d. grocery |
| 7. a. semester | b. experiment | c. necessary | d. Geography |
| 8. a. understand | b. participate | c. entertain | d. volunteer |
| 9. a. comfort | b. concern | c. contact | d. garbage |
| 10. a. excellent | b. expensive | c. convenient | d. available |

II. VOCABULARY

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. I'm not very good _____ repairing things.
a. at b. for c. in d. about
2. I prefer city life _____ country life.
a. than b. against c. to d. over
3. We haven't seen each other _____ a long time.
a. since b. at c. in d. for
4. We are playing a game. Why don't you _____?
a. join in b. come in c. get in d. break in
5. The store owners in the neighborhood have been _____ about the new mall for a few months.
a. interested b. excited c. surprised d. concerned
6. Living in the country is not expensive. And it isn't complex _____.
a. either b. neither c. too d. so
7. He hid that letter in a drawer _____ no one could read it.
a. because b. so that c. although d. when
8. Excuse me! I'm doing my homework. _____ turn down your radio a bit?
a. Would you like b. Why don't you c. Could you d. Would you mind
9. You're always at home. You _____ go out more often.
a. should b. can c. must d. ought
10. Students should take every _____ to widen their experience.
a. advantage b. way c. change d. opportunity

B. Use the correct word form of the word given in each sentence.

11. He was the _____ of the school after winning the contest. (proud)
12. Disneyland is one of the famous areas of _____. (entertain)
13. He had no _____ for his absence. (explain)

14. We live in a rather rich _____. (neighbor)

15. Television is very _____ nowadays. (popularity)

III. GRAMMAR AND STRUCTURE

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. He _____ to improve his Spanish pronunciation, but he had no luck.
a. tried hardly b. hardly tried c. tried hard d. tried harder
2. The next train to Newcastle _____ at 3.45.
a. leaves b. is leaving c. is going to leave d. left
3. The exam was fairly easy : _____ we expected.
a. more easy that b. more easy than c. easier than d. easier as
4. The moon _____ around the earth.
a. has moved b. moves c. is moving d. will move
5. She told him _____ up late.
a. not stay b. to stay not c. not to stay d. to not stay
6. I _____ Jane at the party ten days ago.
a. see b. saw c. have seen d. will see
7. We _____ him since we left high school.
a. don't see b. didn't see c. haven't seen d. won't see
8. Practice _____ English anywhere you can is a way to better your speaking skill.
a. speak b. to speak c. speaking d. for speaking
9. Oh, no! It _____ to rain and my clothes are on the line.
a. starts b. will start c. is to start d. is starting
10. The film was boring. It was _____ film I've ever seen.
a. most boring b. more boring c. the more boring d. the most boring

B. Choose word or phrase that needs correcting.

11. My uncle and aunt live in this village for over twenty years.
A B C D
12. You should take a taxi although it's raining hard.
A B C D
13. We are going to study tonight until we will finish our homework.
A B C D
14. Our new car is hard to drive than our old car.
A B C D
15. There are a lot of food in the fridge, so help yourself.
A B C D

IV. READING COMPREHENSION

A. Choose the most suitable word to complete the passage.

There are two classes at the Elementary level; one is for complete (1)_____ and the other is for students who know only (2)_____ English. In both classes you will practice simple conversations.

In the class at the Intermediate level you will have a lot of (3)_____ in communicating in real-life situations because we help you to use the English you have previously (4)_____ in your own country. You will also have the chance to improve your (5)_____ of English grammar and to build up your vocabulary.

The emphasis is on oral communication practice in a wide variety of situations at the advanced (6)____. You will learn how to use language correctly and appropriately when you (7)_____ to native speakers. In addition, you will develop such study (8)_____ as reading efficiently, writing articles and reports, and note-taking from books and talks.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. a. creators | b. founders | c. beginners | d. pioneers |
| 2. a. few | b. little | c. a few | d. a little |
| 3. a. action | b. practice | c. doing | d. use |
| 4. a. studied | b. known | c. practised | d. used |
| 5. a. information | b. education | c. knowledge | d. memory |
| 6. a. event | b. level | c. way | d. aspect |
| 7. a. say | b. tell | c. state | d. speak |
| 8. a. skills | b. trainings | c. experiments | d. facilities |

B. Read the passage then choose the best answer for each question.

Last week, my friend and I spent a weekend in the countryside. We visited my uncle's farm. I had been to the farm several times before, but this was the first time for my friend. Naturally, it was a great event for him. Finally, the days came. It was a fine morning. We got up very early because we wanted to leave home after breakfast. We made the journey by bus. We reach my uncle farm at noon. After lunch we spent many hours walking round the village to see the sights and walking through the wood to look for bird's nests.

In the next morning, we have a big breakfast with plenty of farm products. After breakfast, my uncle took us to a small lake not far from home. There we fished and had a nice lunch with the fish we caught.

The weekend was short; however, we enjoyed it very much. The country air was fresh and pure. We felt healthy and strong when we came back to the city for our school work.

9. How long did the writer and his friend spend in the country?
a. a day b. two days c. a few days d. a week
10. What was the weather like on the day they started their journey?
a. It was bad b. It was rainy c. It was gloomy d. It was good
11. When did they reach the farm?
a. at 9 a.m b. at 12 o'clock c. at 4 p.m d. at 8 p.m
12. What did they do on the first day?
a. go fishing b. go sightseeing c. go hunting d. go swimming
13. How did they feel when they come back for their school work?
a. healthy b. enjoyable c. fresh d. tired

V. WRITING

A. Rewrite these sentences, begining with the word given.

1. 'Turn off all the lights when you go out,' Jane said to Tim.
Jane _____
2. 'You should take more exercises, Mr Roberts,' the doctor said.
The doctor _____

3. No one in the group is younger than Jane.

Jane is _____

4. It's nearly two years since we saw Joanna.

We haven't _____

5. My sister dances very well.

My sister is _____

A. Write sentences based on the given cues. Make changes if necessary.

6. Hoang/ used/ write/ friends/ but/ now/ he/ telephone//

7. He/ work/ bank/ since/ he/ leave/ college//

8. We/ extreme/ tired/ after/ trip/ so/ sleep/ bus/ way/ home//

9. Language learners/ try/ different/ ways/ learn/ words/ so as/ find out/ best way/ themselves//

10. I/ prefer/ live/ the country/ live/ the city//

THE FIRST-SEMESTER EXAMINATION

Time allowed: 45 minutes

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the that of the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. typhoon | b. recycle | c. supply | d. typical |
| 2. a. <u>own</u> | b. crowd | c. know | d. window |
| 3. a. <u>concerned</u> | b. <u>increased</u> | c. <u>offered</u> | d. <u>revised</u> |

II. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. a. magazine | b. telephone | c. community | d. dangerous |
| 2. a. semester | b. electricity | c. arrangement | d. delicious |

III. Choose the suitable word in brackets to fill in the blank.

- Please let Helen _____ with you.
a. go b. to go c. going d. goes
- No one else in the class plays the guitar _____ John.
a. as well b. as well than c. so well as d. as good as
- Ian _____ in Scotland for ten years. Now he lives in London.
a. lives b. has lived c. lived d. is living
- He _____ five gold medals since the beginning of the Sea Games.
a. wins b. won c. has won d. is winning
- The students are playing _____ in the schoolyard.
a. happy b. happier c. happiest d. happily
- My friend suggested _____ by bus.
a. to go b. go c. going d. goes
- We _____ wear uniform when we are at school.
a. have to b. must c. can d. may

8. I'm very _____ in the information you have given me.
a. concerned b. surprised c. worried d. interested
9. _____ does it take you to go to school?
a. How much b. How long c. How far d. How often
10. Lake Superior is _____ any other lakes in the world.
a. larger than b. the largest of c. largest of d. the larger than

IV. Fill in the blank with one suitable word.

The country is (1) _____ beautiful than a town and pleasant to live in. Many people think so, and go to the country (2) _____ the summer holidays though they cannot live (3) _____ all the year round. Some have a cottage built in a village (4) _____ that they can go there whenever they can find the (5) _____.

The village green is a wide stretch of grass, and houses or cottages are (6) _____ round it. Country life is now fairly comfortable and many villages have (7) _____ brought through pipes into each (8) _____.

V. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- Our country is rich in _____ resources. (nature)
- How _____ of you to break that cup! (care)
- They are members of an international _____. (organize)
- I have to do some maths _____ tonight. (revise)
- English is _____ used in many parts of the world. (wide)

VI. Match the questions in column A to the answers in column B.

A.

- What are you studying?
- Why do you think most people learn English?
- Do you like learning English?
- When did you start learning English?
- How did you learn to speak English so well?
- Where are you studying?
- Why did you choose that college?
- Are most of your books in English?
- Are you going to visit Britain?

B.

- At New Method College.
- Two years ago.
- Yes, I am. Probably next year.
- All of them are.
- Yes, I do.
- English
- Very often it's to get a better job.
- I speak English whenever I have a chance.
- I heard it was very good.

1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____; 8. ____; 9. ____

VII. Complete the passage with the suitable words in the box.

interesting available least educational fields higher advantages range

There are various (1) _____ to living in a large city. For one thing, there is the matter of education: (2) _____ programs of all kinds for all ages and interests are (3) _____ at all times of day and night in a city. Then, a city offers a wide (4) _____ of choices in entertainment, recreation, and culture as well as opportunities to meet many (5) _____ people. Last but not (6) _____ is the opportunity for jobs and money: Many jobs in many (7) _____ are available with (8) _____ salaries than in a small town.

VIII. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

1. The last time I saw him was in 1985.
I haven't _____
2. When did you begin to learn English?
How long _____
3. Are you and Jane the same age?
Are you as _____
4. I expected my friends to arrive at 4 o'clock, but they arrived at 2.30.
My friends _____
5. "Don't walk on the grass," the gardener said to us.
The gardener _____

UNIT 9

A FIRST-AID COURSE

I. Match the definitions or meanings in column A to the words in column B.

A

1. Awake and able to see, hear and think.
2. A stick that is placed under the arm to help a person who has difficulty in walking.
3. Treatment given to an injured person before a doctor comes.
4. A vehicle equipped to carry sick or injured people to hospital.
5. A long thin piece of cloth used for tying round and protecting a wound.
6. An instrument used for weighing people or things.
7. A small piece of cloth or paper used for wiping the face, blowing the nose into, ect.
8. A type of bed used for carrying the sick or injured people.

B

- a. bandage
- b. ambulance
- c. conscious
- d. first-aid
- e. stretcher
- f. crutch
- g. handkerchief
- h. scale

1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____; 8. ____

II. Complete the sentences, using the correct form or tense of the verbs in the box.

arrive bleed force revive inject ease elevate minimize sterilize cover

1. She fainted but the brandy soon _____ her.
2. These medicines can _____ your backache.
3. After about fifteen minutes, an ambulance _____ and she was taken to the hospital.
4. Her mother _____ her to lie in the bed all day yesterday.
5. Don't _____ her head higher than her feet.
6. The wound is _____. Please give me a bandage.
7. You can try to _____ the damage of tissue.
8. The doctor _____ penicillin into my arm.
9. You should use a towel or a handkerchief _____ the wound.
10. They always _____ surgical instruments before the operation.

III. Combine each pair of sentences, using *so that*; *in order (not) to* or *so as (not) to*.

1. He always drives carefully. He doesn't want to cause accidents.
2. Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
3. I went to the college. I wanted to see Professor Taylor.
4. She wore warm clothes. She didn't want to get cold.
5. I closed the window. I didn't want anybody to look at my room.
6. We turned out the lights. We didn't want to waste electricity.
7. He moved to the front row. He could hear the speaker better.
8. I left Dave my phone number. I wanted him to be able to contact me.
9. Thanh and Nga are going to Australia. They want to learn English.
10. We hurried to school. We didn't want to be late.

IV. Complete the sentences in column A with the ideas in column B.

A

1. My father turns on the television in order...
2. John moved to a new flat so as ...
3. I got up early this morning in order ...
4. She's staying in USA for six months so that ...
5. He went to France in order ...
6. Send the letter express so that ...
7. We try our best to study so as ...
8. The students were in a hurry so as ...

B

- a. ... not to be late for school.
- b. ... he'll get it before Tuesday.
- c. ... to see the news.
- d. ... to catch the bus in time.
- e. ... not to fail in the final exam.
- f. ... she can perfect her English.
- g. ... to be near his work.
- h. ... to learn French.

1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____; 8. ____

V. Complete the sentences with *will ('ll)* or *won't* + one of these verbs: *be, come, wait, like, happen, know, meet, pass, get, look*.

1. I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. It _____ again.
2. Can you wait for me? I _____ very long.
3. They have invited him to the party but they don't think he _____.
4. Tom _____ the final exam. He hasn't worked hard enough for it.
5. Why don't you try on this dress? I think it _____ nice on you.
6. I _____ here until you come back tomorrow.
7. Don't ask Susan for advice. She _____ what to do.
8. I'm too tired to walk home. I think I _____ a taxi.

9. You must meet George sometime. I think you _____ him.
10. What a nuisance! I hope we _____ him again.

VI. Give the right form of the verbs in brackets: Simple Future or Simple Present.

1. We _____ (go) out when the rain _____ (stop).
2. She _____ (not come) until you _____ (be) ready.
3. I _____ (come) and see them before I _____ (leave) here.
4. We _____ (phone) you as soon as we _____ (arrive) in Ha Noi.
5. When I _____ (see) Mr. Pike tomorrow, I _____ (give) him your message.
6. He promises he _____ (leave) before the sun _____ (rise).
7. They _____ (move) to their new house at Christmas this year.
8. Who _____ (look after) the children when your sister _____ (be) away?
9. You _____ (be) late if you _____ (not/ hurry).
10. Thanks for letting me borrow your camera. I _____ (bring) it back to you after I _____ (return) from my holiday.

VII. Which is correct?

1. "Did you phone Ruth?" "Oh, no. I forgot. I'm going to phone/ I'll phone her now."
2. I can't meet you tomorrow morning. I am playing/ will play tennis.
3. We meet/ will meet you outside the theater in half an hour, OK?
4. "I need some money." "Well, I am lending/ will lend you some."
5. I am having/ will have a party next Saturday. I hope you can come.
6. "Remember to lock the door before leaving." "OK. I don't forget/ won't forget."
7. What time does your train leave/ will your train leave tomorrow?
8. Are you doing/ Will you do anything tomorrow evening?
9. I don't want to go to the movies alone. Do you go/ Will you go with me?
10. It's a secret between us. I promise I won't tell/ don't tell anybody.

VIII. Complete these dialogues with expressions for the requests, offers or promises.

1. A: It's so cold. (you/ close/ the windows?)
Could you close the window, please?
 B: OK. I'll do it now.
2. A: I feel tired and thirsty.
 B: Well, _____
 (you/ like/ some cold drink?)
 A: _____ (That/ nice)
3. A: You must bring her back before 4.30.
 B: OK. _____
 (I/ promise/ we/ back/ on time)
4. A: Oh! I cut myself. _____ (you/ give/ a bandage?)
 B: Sure. Here you are.
5. A: Please go this way, sir. _____ (I/ carry/ bags?)
 B: No, thank you.
6. A: Here is your report card. I think you should work harder on your Math and English.

B: Yes, Mom. _____

(I/ try/ best/ improve/ them)

7. A: The room is in a mess. _____ (you/ tidy it up?)

B: I'm sorry, I can't. I'm very busy at the moment.

8. A: I need some help.

B: _____ (What/ I/ do/ you?)

A: I'm going to the Museum this morning, but I don't have a bike.

B: _____ (I/ lend/ you/ my bike)

IX. Fill in the blanks with the suitable prepositions.

1. The girl fell _____ her bike and hit her head _____ the road.
2. The policeman asked me to phone _____ an ambulance.
3. You'd better put pressure _____ the wound.
4. The ambulance will be there _____ about 10 minutes.
5. Don't overheat the victim _____ blankets or coats.
6. How can we make contact _____ you?
7. Thanks _____ your praise. It really cheers me _____.
8. Will you come _____ to my house _____ the weekend?
9. Ngo Si Lien Lane is _____ Quang Trung Street and Tran Hung Dao Street.
10. After the accident I spent six months _____ crutches.

X. Read the passage carefully, then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

When people have a cold, a fever, or the flu, they usually go to the doctor for help or they get some medicine from the drugstore. But many people also use home remedies for common illnesses.

Lots of people drink hot chicken soup when they have a cold. They find it clears the head and the nose. Some people rub oil on the chest for a cold. Other people drink a mixture of red pepper, hot water, sugar, lemon juice, and milk or vinegar. Here are some simple home remedies.

Bee stings and insect bites: Wash the sting or bite. Put some meat tenderizer on a handkerchief and then put it on the bite for half an hour.

Burns: Put the burn under cold water or put a cold handkerchief on it. But don't put ice on the burn.

Coughs: Drink warm liquids or take some honey.

Indigestion: Drink some water with a teaspoon of baking soda in it.

Insomnia: Drink a large glass of warm milk.

- indigestion : *chứng khó tiêu* . - insomnia : *chứng mất ngủ*

1. People use home remedies for every disease.
2. Hot chicken soup is good for a cold.
3. Meat tenderizer helps an insect bite.
4. Ice is good for a burn.
5. Honey helps a cough.
6. Hot liquids are good for indigestion.
7. Warm milk helps you go to sleep.

TEST FOR UNIT 9

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. <u>revive</u> | b. <u>tight</u> | c. <u>describe</u> | d. <u>victim</u> |
| 2. a. <u>could</u> | b. <u>wound</u> | c. <u>would</u> | d. <u>should</u> |
| 3. a. <u>bleed</u> | b. <u>heat</u> | c. <u>head</u> | d. <u>tea</u> |
| 4. a. <u>burned</u> | b. <u>stopped</u> | c. <u>asked</u> | d. <u>promised</u> |
| 5. a. <u>towel</u> | b. <u>down</u> | c. <u>window</u> | d. <u>flower</u> |

II. Choose the suitable words or phrases to fill in the blanks.

1. Cool the burns immediately so as to _____ tissue damage.
a. ease b. relieve c. minimize d. maximize
2. The lane is _____ Nguyen Trai Street and Tran Hung Dao Street.
a. near b. between c. beside d. on
3. _____ you post this letter for me, please?
a. Will b. Do c. Are d. Won't
4. She promises she _____ me up at 7.30.
a. picks b. pick c. is going to pick d. will pick
5. Are you looking forward _____ on holiday?
a. going b. to go c. to going d. that you go
6. People use first-aid _____ ease the victim's pain and anxiety.
a. so that b. in order to c. so as not to d. in order that
7. _____ is used to check one's eyesight.
a. Eye-shade b. Eyeglass c. Eyepiece d. Eye chart
8. Leave the victim _____ flat and don't let him _____ chilled.
a. lying/ to become b. to lie/ become c. lying/ become d. to lie/ to become
9. He broke his legs, so he has to use a(n) _____ to get around.
a. stretcher b. ambulance c. wheelchair d. scale
10. Shall I do the washing-up? - _____.
a. I'm afraid not b. I don't think so
c. No, thanks. I can do it myself. d. I'm sorry I can't

III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. She was _____ for days after the accident. (conscious)
2. His speedy _____ after the operation amazed all the doctors. (revive)
3. The _____ of water caused the dam to burst. (press)
4. The heart pumps _____ around the body. (bleed)
5. Come by the fire. You must be _____ to the bone. (chill)
6. I want an _____ reply. (immediately)
7. The victim who has a dog bite needs an anti-tetanus _____. (inject)
8. She is very _____ about her mother's health. (anxiety)
9. The nurse is giving Lan some first-aid _____. (instruct)
10. Make sure that the needles are _____. (sterilize)

VI. Read the passage, then choose the right answer.

Yesterday, when I was riding along a busy street, I saw an accident. A woman was knocked down when she crossed the street at a zebra crossing. Many people stopped to offer their help. A policeman arrived and asked a young man to telephone for an ambulance. While waiting for the ambulance, the policeman and some people tried to stop the bleeding. They used a handkerchief to cover the wound, then put pressure on it and held it tight. They tried to talk to her in order to keep her awake. After about ten minutes, the ambulance arrived and the woman was taken to the hospital.

- Where did the accident happen?
a. on a sidewalk b. at a crosswalk c. in a main street d. on a pavement
- Who telephoned for an ambulance?
a. the writer b. the policeman c. the young man d. the driver
- They used a handkerchief to cover the wound in order to _____.
a. put a pressure on it b. hold it tight
c. wait for the ambulance d. stop the bleeding
- They tried to talk to her so that _____.
a. she couldn't fall asleep b. she could ease her pain
c. she could recognize them d. she couldn't be afraid
- Which of the following sentences is not true?
a. The woman had a traffic accident.
b. The woman was helped by many people.
c. The woman was unconscious for a while.
d. The woman was taken to the hospital by the ambulance

VII. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

- Where is the nearest post office?
Could you _____
- Open the door, please.
Will you _____
- Hanh is studying very hard because she doesn't want to fail in the exam.
Hanh is studying very hard in order _____
- Do you want me to drive?
Shall _____
- I want you to help me carry my bags.
Can _____
- He climbed the tree because he wanted to get a better view.
He climbed the tree so as _____
- I have decided to help him revise his lessons.
I am _____
- We are willing to drive you to the airport.
We'll _____
- You can get off this train at Bath.
This train _____
- 'Please send an ambulance to Quang Trung School,' Lan said to the nurse.
Lan asked _____

I. Complete each of the sentences with one suitable word.

1. Every milk bottle can be _____ thirty times.
2. These materials can be _____ into other packaging products.
3. We should use tree leaves to _____ things.
4. We should do more to _____ the environment and _____ natural resources.
5. Reduce means not buying products which are _____.
6. We shouldn't _____ things away.
7. Farmers often use dung for _____ their fields
8. The milkman brings bottles of milk to houses and _____ the empty ones.

II. Complete the recycling instructions. Use the verbs in the box.

dip	blow	wash	mix	dry	break	use	melt
-----	------	------	-----	-----	-------	-----	------

First, (1) _____ the glass into small pieces. Then (2) _____ the glass with a detergent liquid. Next, (3) _____ the glass pieces completely. (4) _____ them with certain specific chemicals. After that, (5) _____ the mixture until it becomes a liquid. Finally, (6) _____ a long pipe, (7) _____ it into the liquid, then (8) _____ the liquid into intended shapes.

III. Complete the sentences, using the verbs in present passive form.

1. Cheese _____ (make) from milk.
2. Many accidents _____ (cause) by careless driving.
3. It's a big factory. Five hundred people _____ (employ) there.
4. A cinema is a place where films _____ (show).
5. Most of the Earth's surface _____ (cover) by water.
6. You can't see the house from the road. It _____ (surround) by trees.
7. The concerts _____ (usually/ hold) at the City Theater.
8. How _____ this word _____ (pronounce)?
9. A lot of beautiful toys _____ (make) from recycled plastic.
10. I _____ (take) to school by my father every day.

IV. Complete these sentences with the following verbs (in the passive form).

answer	make	send	open	use	build	hold	sign	clean	recycle
--------	------	------	------	-----	-------	------	------	-------	---------

1. The room will _____ later.
2. This parcel mustn't _____ until Christmas.
3. Tea can _____ with cold water.
4. A meeting will _____ before the Teachers' Day.
5. Tires can _____ to make pipes or floor coverings.
6. Application should _____ before December 30th.
7. The contract must _____ by the manager today.
8. The new bridge is going to _____ by the end of the year.
9. Cloth bags should _____ instead of plastic bags.
10. This question can _____ by most of the students.

V. Change these sentences into the passive voice.

1. The milkman brings bottles of milk to houses.

2. How do people learn languages?

3. John will collect me at the airport.

4. The manager must sign the cheque.

5. They kept me waiting for half an hour.

6. They are building a new ring road round the city.

7. We can't wear jeans at work.

8. Will you invite her to your birthday party?

9. They have built a new hospital near the airport.

10. Do they speak French and English in Canada?

VI. Write the sentences, using the adjective + to-infinitive structure.

Ex: It/ difficult/ learn/ Japanese. *It's difficult to learn Japanese.*

1. We/ delighted/ get/ your letter/ yesterday.

2. It/ not easy/ answer/ these questions.

3. Your writing/ difficult/ read.

4. I/ surprised/ see/ Paul/ the party/ last night

5. It/ impossible/ understand/ his theory.

6. They/ ready/ start/ now.

7. It/ cruel/ tease/ animal

8. you/ pleased/ see/ me/ again?

VII. Combine each pair of the sentences, using the adjective + to-infinitive/ noun clause structures.

Ex: She was disappointed. She heard about that.

She was disappointed to hear about that.

He will win the game. I'm sure.

I'm sure that he will win the game.

1. They passed all the exams. They are lucky.
2. John got Ann's letter yesterday. He was very surprised.
3. She can't come. I'm affraid.
4. We heard about your father's illness. We were sorry.
5. I have nothing better to offer you. I'm ashamed.
6. Susan received a lot of birthday presents. She was happy.
7. You wouldn't come back. I was worried.
8. You are interested in protecting the environment. We are delighted.
9. Jane has decided to leave the company. I'm sorry.
10. He jumped into the river to save the child. It was brave of him.

VIII. Fill in each blank with a suitable preposition.

1. Contact an organization _____ Friends of the Earth _____ information.
2. Don't throw things _____. Try and find another use _____ them.
3. We can look _____ information _____ recycling things in the local library.
4. These shoes are made _____ old car tires.
5. 'Vegetable matter' is made _____ compost.
6. Are you interested _____ protecting the environment.
7. We should use cloth bags instead _____ plastic bags.
8. In the factory, the glass is broken _____, melted and made _____ new glassware.
9. What did the government do to prevent people _____ throwing drink cans away?
10. If you want to share your recycling story _____ our reader, call or fax us _____ 5 265 456.

IX. Read the dialogue and fill in the gap with a phrase or a sentence in the box.

how about the glass bottles	throw things away
with these used things	sent to the factories
what happen next	crush it up and made it into pulp again
don't throw away	are broken into small pieces

Hoa : Oh; no. (1) _____ the old newspapers and the used cans and bottles, Nam.

Nam: What for?

Hoa : They should be collected and (2) _____ to be recycled.

Nam: What do the factories do (3)_____?

Hoa: Well, they take away the ink on the paper, then

(4)_____.

Nam: And (5)_____?

Hoa: The glass bottles (6)_____, mixed with certain specific chemicals, then the mixture is melted into liquid ...

Nam: I think I know (7)_____. Someone will blow the melted glass into bottles, vases, and other glassware.

Hoa: You're right. So we shouldn't (8)_____. Try and find another use for them.

TEST FOR UNIT 10

I. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

1. a. recycle b. protect c. instead d. natural
2. a. fertilize b. represent c. overpackage d. understand
3. a. compost b. product c. resources d. envelope
4. a. difficult b. environment c. certainly d. vegetable
5. a. garbage b. plastic c. industry d. approximate

II. Choose the suitable words or phrases to fill in the blanks.

1. Farmers collect household and garden waste to make _____.
a. glassware b. compost c. fabric d. floor coverings
2. We are delighted _____ your English exam.
a. you pass b. you passed c. you to pass d. your passing
3. You can _____ information on recycling things in the library.
a. look for b. take out c. throw away d. break up
4. Milk bottles can be _____ after being cleaned.
a. recycled b. soaked c. broken d. reused
5. This project _____ next month.
a. is carried out b. will carry out c. carries out d. will be carried out
6. It's dangerous _____ in this river.
a. swim b. to swim c. swimming d. that you swim
7. We are looking forward _____ you in June.
a. to see b. to seeing c. seeing d. to be seen
8. English _____ in many countries in Asia.
a. speaks b. is speaking c. is spoken d. has spoken
9. _____ using plastic bags, we shouldn't use them at all.
a. Because of b. In spite of c. Instead of d. In order of
10. You'll get back your _____ when you bring the cans back for recycling.
a. payment b. deposit c. account d. envelope

III. Complete the passage, using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

Nowadays, a lot of important inventions (1)_____ (carry out) by scientists (2)_____ (work) for large industrial firms. However, there

(3) _____ (be) still opportunities for other people (4) _____ (invent) various things. In Britain, there is a weekly TV program which (5) _____ (attempt) to show all the devices which people (6) _____ (invent) recently. The people (7) _____ (organize) the program receive information about 700 inventions per year. New ideas can (8) _____ (develop) by private inventors. However, it is important (9) _____ (consider) these questions: Will it work? Will it (10) _____ (want)? Is it new?

IV. Use the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Reduce means not buying products which are _____. (overpackage)
2. Linda is one of the _____ from Friends of the Earth. (represent)
3. The country's _____ resources include forests, coal and oil. (nature)
4. Waste paper can be _____ after being recycling. (use)
5. It's _____ to cross the avenue. (danger)
6. Compost is a wonderful _____. It helps plants grow. (fertilize)
7. Share your _____ story with our readers! (recycle)
8. Air is a _____ of gases. (mix)
9. Attractive _____ can help to sell products. (package)
10. These products are _____ friendly. (environment)

V. Choose the word that needs correcting.

1. Anne got mark 10 in math so she felt very happily.
A B C D
2. I expect to meet by my uncle when I arrive at the airport.
A B C D
3. I myself don't eat chili, but it's the most popular spice in a world.
A B C D
4. The house painted more than five years ago, so I'm going to repaint it.
A B C D
5. A lot of crops can't be grew in the mountains beause it gets too cold.
A B C D
6. The telephone was invented with a Scotsman, Alexandre G. Bell, in 1876.
A B C D
7. We reached the nearest village after walk for five hours.
A B C D
8. Would you like coming to my birthday party?
A B C D
9. As soon as Sylvia and Ronald will arrive, the meeting can start.
A B C D
10. It's very difficult for students to answer all of the question in fifteen minutes.
A B C D

VI. Read the passage, then choose the correct answers.

Every day of the year throughout the world, about twenty million paper bags and newspapers are screwed and thrown away.

Making paper requires a lot of wood pulp and the work of millions of workers. Many countries have had plans to recycle waste paper to save money

and labour. In countries where there is the cooperation of the public, paper mills recycle as much as sixty percent of waste paper. Their simple work is to take away the ink, crush it up and make it into pulp again. For every ton of recycled newsprint, twelve trees can be saved. We can insist that the more paper people save, the more trees are preserved.

1. _____ is used for making paper.
a. paper bag b. newspaper c. wood pulp d. waste paper
2. To save money and labour, many countries _____.
a. encourage people to use less paper b. have plans to recycle waste paper
c. persuade people not to cut down trees d. make plans to produce pulp
3. How much waste paper do paper mills recycle?
a. 6% b. 16% c. 60% d. 66%
4. The word 'it' in line 7 refer to _____.
a. wood pulp b. waste paper c. newsprint d. ink
5. Which of the following sentences is not true?
a. Millions of paper are thrown away every day.
b. Making paper requires a lot of labour
c. One ton of recycled paper saves twelve trees.
d. People plant more trees in order to make more paper

VII. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. We must pay the bill at once.
The bill _____
2. Many people in the world speak English.
English _____
3. Working in those conditions is impossible.
It's _____
4. I will repair your bicycle tomorrow afternoon.
Your bicycle _____
5. "Don't throw things away," Miss Linda said to the students.
Miss Linda asked _____
6. Penicillin can cure many dangerous diseases.
Many _____
7. Does your country export rice to Britain?
Is _____
8. I was very delighted that I passed the final exams.
I was very delighted _____
9. We find it difficult to understand this question.
This question _____
10. She's very pleased to see her grandparents soon.
She's looking _____

I. Underline and rewrite the misspelt words.

Ex: There are beautiful limstone islands in Ha Long Bay. limestone

1. Have you ever seen a waterfal? _____
2. It's not easy to find a cheap accomodation at this time _____
3. Look! I can see a boy riding on a water bufaloes. _____
4. May I carry your lugguage? _____
5. He is a member of the Tembu tripe. _____
6. These ancient buildings are the national hiretage. _____
7. Nam sugessted going to Huong Pagoda. _____
8. Sa Pa is a famous moutainous resot in Viet Nam. _____
9. The Taj Mahal is a manificent building. _____
10. He spends all winter on the slops. _____

II. Complete the letter with the suitable words of your choice.

Dear Sandra,

We are (1)_____ a lovely time here in Ha Long City, Vietnam. The (2)_____ is very nice. It's warm and sunny. We're (3)_____ in a comfortable hotel near the beach. We have a spectacular view of the (4)_____ from our bedroom. Yesterday, we went to (5)_____ some wonderful caves and grottoes in Ha Long Bay. Today we are going (6)_____ a boat trip to Cat Ba Island. We (7)_____ call you next week.

(8)_____ wishes,

Tim

III. Use 'Would/ Do you mind (not)+ verb-ing?' to make these requests more polite.

Ex: Could you open the windows?

Would/ Do you mind opening the windows?

1. Can you take me a photograph? _____
2. Could you wait a moment, please? _____
3. Will you turn down the TV, please? _____
4. Please make some tea. _____
5. Could you lend me some money? _____
6. Will you post the letters for me? _____
7. Please don't play your music so loud. _____
8. Please don't use the office phone. _____

IV. Use 'Would/ Do you mind if ...?' to make the following sentences more polite.

Ex: Shall I sit here?

Do you mind if I sit here? / Would you mind if I sat here?

1. Can I move the refrigerator to the right corner?

Would _____

2. Could I smoke?

Do _____

3. May I ask you a question?

Would _____

4. Could I turn the air conditioner off?

Would _____

5. Can I use your handphone?

Do _____

6. Shall I carry your luggage?

Would _____

7. Could I borrow your newspaper?

Do _____

8. Shall I drive?

Would _____

V. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs from the box.

travel come clean sit wait go use take live show

1. Would you mind _____ how to use this machine?

2. It's good to visit other places - I enjoy _____.

3. Would you like _____ to dinner on Friday?

4. Do you mind _____ the kitchen?

5. Would you mind if I _____ your phone?

6. I'm not quite ready yet. Would you mind _____ a little longer.

7. When I was a child, I hated _____ to bed early.

8. Do you mind if I _____ a photo of your family?

9. Would you mind if I _____ here waiting for the manager?

10. I don't like _____ in this part of town. I want to move somewhere else.

VI. Combine each pair of sentences, using present participle (V-ing) or past participle (V-ed)

Ex: The boy is Ba. He is reading the book.

The boy reading the book is Ba.

The old lamp is five dollars. It's made in China.

The old lamp made in China is five dollars.

1. The baby is crying for her mother. She is sitting in an armchair.

2. The boy was taken to the hospital. He was injured in the accident.

3. The road is very narrow. It joins the two villages.

4. Do you know the woman? The woman is talking to Tom.
5. The window has been repaired. It was broken last night.
6. The taxi broke down. It was taking us to the airport.
7. A bridge has been declared unsafe. It was built only two years ago.
8. Most of the goods are exported. They are made in this factory.
9. A new factory has just opened in the town. The factory employs 500 people.
10. "Romeo and Juliet" is the best tragedy I have ever seen. It was written by Shakespeare.

VII. Complete the sentences, using one of the following verbs in the correct form.

dance steal invite blow live offer call arrest touch plant injure

Ex: Everyone touching that wire will get a shock.

1. There was a tree _____ down in the storm last night.
2. Who is the girl _____ with your brother?
3. Half of the people _____ to the party didn't turn up.
4. Life must be unpleasant for people _____ near busy airport.
5. The paintings _____ from the museum haven't been found yet.
6. Somebody _____ Jack phoned while you were out.
7. A few days after the interview, I received a letter _____ me the job.
8. What was the name of the man _____ by the police?
9. The boy _____ in the accident was taken to the hospital.
10. The students _____ flowers in the park are in the volunteer group.

VIII. Complete the sentences, use the correct form or tense of the verbs in the brackets.

1. The man _____ (sit) next to me was very nervous.
2. Tom doesn't enjoy _____ (laugh) at by other people.
3. I'd like you _____ (meet) my mother.
4. Take this street and you _____ (arrive) at the bus station in fifteen minutes.
5. He suggested _____ (travel) around the town by bike.
6. Would you mind _____ (leave) us alone?
7. This is the first time Hoa _____ (meet) Tim's family.
8. She has a lot of novels _____ (write) in English.
9. That book _____ (write) by a famous author.
10. Would you mind if I _____ (turn) off the television?

IX. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions.

1. I'm looking forward _____ seeing you in June.
2. Could I help you _____ your luggage?
3. Would you mind sitting _____ the front seat of the taxi?
4. Ha Long Bay is recognized _____ UNESCO as a World Heritage Site.

5. John is interested _____ the history of Vietnam.
6. She is thinking _____ importing flowers from Vietnam.
7. He realized his alarm clock didn't go _____.
8. Everyone fell _____ the deep and dangerous water.

X. Rearrange these sentences to make a dialogue.

- _____ Tourist: I have heard of Hoi An. Is it an interesting place?
- _____ Guide: Why don't you go to Ha Noi? You can find many historical sites there.
- 1 Tourist: What can I see in Central Viet Nam?
- _____ Guide: Yes. It's an old town with many Japanese and Chinese cultural features.
- _____ Tourist: What other places should I go to?
- _____ Guide: You can enjoy many coastal towns with beautiful beaches. Besides, you can go to Hue and visit the mausoleums of the Nguyen Kings.

XI. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

Ha Long - Bay of the Descending Dragon - is (1)_____ with both Vietnamese and international tourists. One of the attractions of Ha Long is the Bay's calm water with (2)_____ mountains. The Bay's (3)_____ is clear during the spring and early summer. Upon arriving in Ha Long City, visitors can (4)_____ Chay Beach. From the beach, they can (5)_____ a boat and go out to the Bay. It is here that the visitors can find some of Southeast Asia's (6)_____ beautiful sites. Dau Go Cave is one of the most beautiful caves (7)_____ Ha Long. It was the cave in which General Tran Hung Dao hid wooden (8)_____ to beat the Mongols on Bach Dang River in 1288.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. a. famous | b. interested | c. popular | d. magnificent |
| 2. a. limestone | b. wooden | c. snowy | d. remote |
| 3. a. atmosphere | b. sights | c. beaches | d. water |
| 4. a. go on | b. go along | c. go up | d. go into |
| 5. a. buy | b. build | c. hire | d. find |
| 6. a. most | b. best | c. the most | d. the best |
| 7. a. in | b. on | c. of | d. at |
| 8. a. streams | b. stakes | c. strings | d. sticks |

TEST FOR UNIT 11

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. <u>seat</u> | b. <u>great</u> | c. <u>seaside</u> | d. <u>beach</u> |
| 2. a. <u>sights</u> | b. <u>flights</u> | c. <u>villages</u> | d. <u>tribes</u> |
| 3. a. <u>heritage</u> | b. <u>cottage</u> | c. <u>luggage</u> | d. <u>cage</u> |
| 4. a. <u>seat</u> | b. <u>sugar</u> | c. <u>sight</u> | d. <u>sand</u> |
| 5. a. <u>stamps</u> | b. <u>trains</u> | c. <u>hotels</u> | d. <u>caves</u> |

II. Choose the most suitable words or phrases to complete the sentences.

1. I can see a boy _____ a water buffalo.
a. ride b. riding c. to ride d. rode

2. It's _____ to travel around Vietnam.
a. interesting b. interested c. interestingly d. interestedly
3. Would you mind _____ the windows.
a. to close b. closing c. close d. closed
4. She cried _____ when she heard that news.
a. exciting b. excitingly c. excited d. excitedly
5. Would you mind if I _____?
a. smoke b. smoking c. smoked d. will smoke
6. My sister likes sweet _____ from chocolate.
a. making b. made c. to make d. that make
7. This is the first time Sharron _____ rice paddies.
a. is seeing b. saw c. see d. has seen
8. There are flights daily to Ho Chi Minh City _____ Monday.
a. besides b. after c. except d. on
9. We are taking a _____ to Ha Long Bay next weekend.
a. two-day trip b. two-days trip c. two day trip d. two-day trips
10. 'Would you mind closing the window?' '_____
a. No, I'm afraid not. b. No, of course not.
c. No, I can't. d. I'd rather you didn't

III. Fill in each blank with an appropriate word to complete Tim's letter.

Dear Peter,

We are (1)_____ a wonderful time in Ha Noi. Life in Ha Noi is very exciting. Ha Noi is a large (2)_____ and it's also very interesting! Vietnamese (3)_____ are very friendly and hospitable. They give us a warm (4)_____. Yesterday we saw a street musician (5)_____ the guitar on the pavement. He played quite beautifully. The busy street and the noise around didn't bother him at (6)_____. I'm sending a (7)_____ of our hotel. It looks very nice, (8)_____ it? It's so quiet that we can (9)_____ believe it's in the capital of Vietnam.

I hope you're all well. Please (10)_____ my regards to your parents.

Yours truly,

Tim

IV. Match the request in column A with its reply in column B.

A

1. Do you mind if I turn on the TV?
2. Can you lend me your motorbike?
3. Would you mind opening the windows?
4. Could I read your newspaper?
5. Would you mind if I used your phone?
6. May I go out for a minute?
7. Am I allowed to sit here?
8. Will you post the letter for me?

B

- a. No, you may not.
- b. No, I don't mind. What's on tonight?
- c. No, sorry.
- d. OK. The post office is on my way.
- e. Sure. I'm hot, too.
- f. No, please do.
- g. Certainly. Here you are.
- h. I'm sorry, I can't.

1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____; 8. ____

V. Use the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Every week, there are two _____ from Ha Noi to Nha Trang. (fly)
2. It's difficult to find _____ at busy time. (accommodate)
3. The next _____ for New York will be at 11.00. (depart)
4. The _____ of Flight 106 from Boston has been delayed. (arrive)
5. _____, dark clouds soon appeared and it began to rain. (fortunate)
6. There are flights _____ from Ho Chi Minh City to Nha Trang. (day)
7. My family live in a northern _____ region. (mountain)
8. He received the award in _____ of his success over the past year. (recognize)

VI. Choose the word or phrase that need correcting.

1. My sister has done her homework in her room for a quarter past eight.
A B C D
2. Would you mind to open the window for me?
A B C D
3. Mary enjoys to be able to meet a lot of interesting people during her vacation.
A B C D
4. It has been a long time since we last talked together, isn't it?
A B C D
5. Do you mind if I asked you to move this table?
A B C D

VII. Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer.

NHA TRANG

When people talk about Nha Trang, the biggest city in Khanh Hoa Province, they often think of a tropical paradise. Nha Trang is a famous seaside resort. It has a long coastline with beautiful white sandy beaches.

In the morning and afternoon, tourists can take part in various fascinating outdoor activities such as mud bathing, swimming, snorkeling or scuba diving. Snorkeling and scuba diving are both interesting sports, as swimmers may swim underwater and admire the lives at the bottom of the sea. Besides, tourist can also take boat trips to the islands. One of the most enjoyable trips is the trip to Mieu Island, where Tri Nguyen Aquarium was built in 1999. This aquarium is now home to different kinds of colorful fish and even a few sharks.

In addition, tourists can spend an evening visiting a fishing village, where they could get a taste of the local seafood. There are crabs, shrimps, lobsters, clams, oysters, and several other kind of fish - all are fresh and delicious.

- tropical paradise: *thiên đường nhiệt đới* - mud bathing: *tắm bùn*
- snorkeling: *môn bơi lặn có ống thở* - oyster: *con sò*

1. Nha Trang is _____.
a. famous for its fresh and delicious seafood b. located in Khanh Hoa Province
c. a paradise d. not a resort
2. Tourists can take part in some outdoor activities such as _____.
a. visiting Nha Trang Pasteur Institute b. eating the local seafood
c. visiting Tri Nguyen Aquarium d. scuba diving

3. At Tri Nguyen Aquarium, visitors can enjoy _____.
 a. watching a few sharks only b. a taste of the local seafood
 c. watching sharks and various kinds of colorful fish d. feeding the fish
4. At a fishing village, tourist can _____.
 a. get a taste of the local seafood c. choose crabs, shrimps
 b. catch the fish and cook them d. enjoy fishing
5. Which of the following sentences is not true?
 a. Nha Trang is a nice seaside resort.
 b. Tri Nguyen Aquarium is on an island.
 c. Most tourists are interested in snorkeling and scuba diving.
 d. The local seafood is fresh and delicious.

VIII. Rewrite the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

1. May I turn off the television?
 Would you _____
2. Please turn the music down.
 Do you _____
3. Is it all right if I use your phone?
 Do you _____
4. Would you mind filling in this form?
 Could you _____
5. Do you want to come for dinner tonight?
 Would you _____
6. Traveling around Viet Nam is very interesting.
 It _____
7. Will you permit me to use your dictionary?
 I hope you don't mind. _____
8. The girls who are playing chess are Nga and Hoa.
 The girls _____
9. The paintings that were stolen from the museum haven't been found yet.
 The paintings _____
10. Why don't you go to Ben Thanh Market?
 How about _____

UNIT 12

A VACATION ABROAD

I. Put these names in the blanks.

Southeast Asia	Australia	Ottawa	The United Kingdom	London
Mount Rushmore	The Statue of Liberty	Eiffel Tower	Montreal	

Ex: The Statue of Liberty is in New York Harbor.

1. _____ is a city where both French and English are spoken.
2. _____ is situated on the River Thames.
3. The capital of Canada is _____.
4. _____ is in Paris, France.
5. Canberra is the capital of _____.

6. _____ consists of England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland.
7. Thailand is in _____.
8. _____ is a national memorial where the faces of four U.S. presidents were carved.

II. Complete the passage with the most suitable words

Torquay is one of the (1)_____ popular holiday resorts in Britain. (2)_____ provides entertainment, sports of every kind, etc. You can (3)_____ at the hotels by the sea, or at comfortable but less expensive (4)_____ houses. There (5)_____ camping sites too. Torquay has large sandy beaches (6)_____ you can buy refreshments and hire (7)_____ to sit on. There are large areas of grass land and miles of cliff paths (8)_____ walkers.

III. Write sentences with the cue words, using the past progressive tense.

Ex: I/ write/ my report/ 8 o'clock last night

I was writing my report at 8 o'clock last night.

1. They/ play/ tennis/ 10.30 yesterday morning

2. Ann/ do/ homework/ 5 o'clock this afternoon

3. My father/ wash/ car/ from five to six

4. This time last year/ we/ live/ France

5. The students/ offer/ flowers/ the visitors

6. I/ cook/ dinner/ half an hour ago

7. She/ work/ the studio/ that time

8. What/ you/ do/ from 3 to 6 yesterday afternoon?

IV. Which is correct?

1. The doorbell rang/ was ringing while Tom watched/ was watching television.
2. How fast did you drive/ were you driving when the accident happened/ was happening?
3. Anna and Susan made/ were making dinner when Martin arrived/ was arriving home.
4. The light went out/ was going out while we had/ were having dinner. But it came/ was coming on again after about ten minutes.
5. "What did you do/ were you doing this time yesterday?"
- "I worked/ was working on the computer."
6. It suddenly began/ was beginning to rain while Laura sat/ was sitting in the garden.
7. Sam took/ was taking a photograph of me while I didn't look/ wasn't looking.

8. When I saw/ was seeing them, they tried/ were trying to find a new house near their work.
9. I walked/ was walking along the street when I suddenly felt/ was feeling something hit me in the back. I didn't know/ wasn't knowing what it was.
10. Last night I dropped/ was dropping a plate when I did/ was doing the washing up. Fortunately it didn't break/ wasn't breaking.

V. Put in the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- Reporter: Mike and Harriet, tell me what you _____ (see).
- Harriet: Well, when we (1) _____ (drive) home last night, we (2) _____ (see) a strange object in the sky.
- Mike: While we (3) _____ (come) down the hill into town, it just suddenly (4) _____ (appear) in front of us. We (5) _____ (stop) the car and (6) _____ (get) out.
- Harriet: It (7) _____ (be) a clear night. The stars (8) _____ (twinkle) in the sky.
- Mike: It was a spaceship. It (9) _____ (seem) quite big. It (10) _____ (have) some strange writing on the side. And a light (11) _____ (flash) on the top.
- Harriet: While we (12) _____ (watch) it, it suddenly (13) _____ (fly) away and (14) _____ (disappear).

VI. Complete B's sentence, using "always + V-ing".

Ex: My grandmother is always forgetting her umbrella.

1. A: May I watch television, Mom?
B: You _____. You should do something more active.
2. A: Look! You've made the same mistake again.
B: Oh no! I _____.
3. A: I'm afraid I've lost my key again.
B: Oh dear! You _____.
4. A: The car has broken down again.
B: That car is useless! It _____.
5. A: Oh, Sue has left the lights on again.
B: Typical! She _____.
6. A: Nam and Hoa have missed the school bus again.
B: Not again! They _____.
7. A: I've lost my pen again.
B: Not again! You _____.
8. A: I've forgotten my glasses again.
B: Typical! You _____.

VII. Fill in the blanks with the suitable prepositions.

1. You must come _____ for dinner one night.
2. We'll only be _____ town _____ three days.
3. What's the weather _____?
4. I'll pick you _____ at the hotel _____ 7 o'clock.
5. They went swimming _____ Waikiki Beach as soon as they arrived _____ the Hawaiian island _____ Oahu.

6. If we don't finish the report today, we can go _____ with it tomorrow.
7. She complained _____ me _____ his rudeness.
8. This doll is made _____ China.
9. We went _____ a 10-day tour of central Africa.
10. They caught the flight 710 _____ 10.00 _____ Thursday, 22.

VIII. Write the questions to complete the dialogue.

Samuel: Hi, Cathy. How was your trip to Japan?

Cathy : It's was wonderful! I really enjoyed it.

Samuel: (1) _____ ?

Cathy : I went with my parents.

Samuel: (2) _____ ?

Cathy : I was there for two weeks.

Samuel: Great! (3) _____ Kyoto?

Cathy : Yes, I did. It's a beautiful city.

Samuel: (4) _____ in Kyoto?

Cathy : The weather was very nice. It's warm and sunny.

Samuel: (5) _____ ?

Cathy : Well, I visited some temples. They're really fantastic!
And then I went to a sumo match in Osaka.

Samuel: (6) _____ ?

Cathy : Yes, it was very funny and excited.

Samuel: (7) _____ while you were in Kyoto?

Cathy : I stayed in an old Japanese inn.

Samuel: And (8) _____ ?

Cathy : Yes, I liked Japanese food. But I didn't like sushi.
By the way, do you want to see my photos?

Samuel: Sure!

IX. Read the passage, then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

London is Britain's biggest city. It is a very old city and dates back to the Romans. It is a city of historic buildings and churches, and it has many beautiful parks. It also has some of the best museums in the world. London is very crowded in summer. It is a popular city with foreign tourists, and has more than eight million visitors a year. The city is famous for its shopping and department stores. London has an excellent underground railway system, so it is easy for tourists to get around. In London, there are plenty of good restaurants where you can get excellent British food. The city also has lots of good Indian, Chinese, Japanese, French, Italian, and Greek restaurants.

1. None of the cities in Britain is larger than London.
2. London was founded by the Romans.
3. London is not busy in summer.
4. Foreign tourists like visiting London.
5. It's not easy for tourists to travel around London.
6. You can get spaghetti or sushi in London.

TEST FOR UNIT 12

I. A. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. arrive | b. <u>s</u> ight | c. <u>i</u> sland | d. pri <u>s</u> on |
| 2. a. <u>wh</u> o | b. <u>wh</u> at | c. <u>wh</u> ere | d. <u>wh</u> ich |
| 3. a. <u>h</u> ead | b. <u>b</u> each | c. <u>w</u> ea <u>th</u> er | d. <u>h</u> eavy |
| 4. a. <u>m</u> ount | b. <u>cl</u> oud | c. <u>t</u> our | d. <u>h</u> ouse |
| 5. a. <u>w</u> hy | b. <u>t</u> ry | c. <u>d</u> ry | d. <u>g</u> ym |

B. Make an accent mark over the stressed syllable of these words.

Australian vacation wonderful accommodation departure
gallery university exciting president souvenir hospitable

II. Choose the most suitable words or phrases to fill in the blanks.

- When we were in Italy, we spent a few days _____ Venice.
a. at b. on c. in d. to
- They are good friends. They _____ each other for a long time.
a. know b. have known c. knew d. were knowing
- How about _____ to Thai Binh Market?
a. going b. to go c. went d. gone
- "What _____ in New York?" - "It's very cold and humid."
a. the weather like b. does the weather like
c. the weather is like d. is the weather like
- "_____ to come and have dinner with us?" - "I'd love to but I'm busy."
a. Do you like b. Would you mind c. Would you like d. Could you please
- Can you tell me where _____?
a. she does b. does she c. she is d. is she
- I was reading while my sisters _____ with their dolls.
a. played b. were playing c. have played d. would play
- Mount Rushmore _____ from more than 100 kilometers away.
a. saw b. can see c. was seen d. can be seen
- George showed me some pictures _____ by his father.
a. paint b. painting c. painted d. that painted
- We were having dinner when the phone _____.
a. ring b. rang c. was ringing d. has rung

III. Complete this postcard with the most suitable words from the box.

local around stayed vacation rented studied fresh learn in so

Dear Karen,

Hi, there! My (1) _____ was great! I visited my friends (2) _____ Puerto Rico. I (3) _____ at a nice hotel near a beautiful beach. We (4) _____ a car and traveled (5) _____ the island.

I tried to (6) _____ windsurfing, but it was (7) _____ difficult. I enjoyed the food and really liked the (8) _____ fruit. I talked to a lot of (9) _____ people there. I'm really glad I (10) _____ Spanish in high school. See you soon!

Love,

Ken

IV. Choose the word that needs correcting.

1. Would you like coming and stay with us while you are in town?
A B C D
2. The people are friendly and the weather has been warmly sunny.
A B C D
3. While I drove home, I turned on the car radio and heard about the accident.
A B C D
4. When she saw a snake at her feet, she was screaming.
A B C D
5. Would you mind if I take a photo of your house?
A B C D
6. I never have anything to write with because I'm always lose my pens.
A B C D
7. Do you mind to go to the grocery to get me some sugar?
A B C D
8. We went on swimming at Waikiki Beach as soon as we arrived on
the Hawaiian island.
A B C D
9. Today we went on an eight-hours tour around the valey.
A B C D
10. Travel abroad has always proved very appealing to me.
A B C D

V. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I'd like to visit Australia because Australian people are very _____. (friend)
2. It's not easy to find cheap _____ at busy times. (accommodate)
3. Most tourists like visiting _____ villages. (tribe)
4. There are _____ ways of solving the problem. (variety)
5. Some _____ are not immediately dangerous because they are not active. (volcanic)
6. _____, her illness was more serious than we thought. (fortunate)
7. I found the trip very _____. (excite)
8. London is _____ for its historic buildings and churches. (fame)

VI. Number these sentences from a letter from 1 to 7.

- _____ We saw Chinatown and Fisherman's Wharf, and took a cruise around San Francisco Bay.
- _____ Then we rented a car and drove to Palm Springs. It's about three hours from Los Angeles. We played golf there and took a tour.
- _____ Well, that's about all for now. I'll tell you about the rest of my trip when I get back.
- 1 We had a great vacation in California!
- _____ After San Francisco, we went to Los Angeles. We love Hollywood and Universal Studios.
- _____ From Palm Springs, we went to San Diego. It's a beautiful city, and the zoo is really interesting.
- _____ We started our trip in San Francisco.

VII. Read these passages, then choose the correct answer.

Australia is an island continent in the South Pacific. The capital is Canberra, but the city with the biggest population is Sydney, which has nearly four million. English is the first language of most people, but there are also many immigrants who speak other languages.

Canada is the second largest country in land side. It stretches 3,223 miles from east to west, and from the North Pole to the U.S. border. Both English and French are official languages. Many French-speaking people live in the province of Quebec, where Montreal is the biggest city. Canada has a cold winter, and many Canadian enjoy winter sports, such as skiing and ice skating.

Switzerland is a small country in central Europe. Its neighbors are France in the west, Italy in the south, Austria in the east, and Germany in the north. Sixty percent of the land in Switzerland is mountains. Switzerland is famous for its banks, tourism, and skiing.

1. Where is Australia?

2. What is the population of Sydney?

3. Is English the unique language spoken in Australia?

4. What is the area of Canada?

5. Which languages are spoken in Canada?

6. What's the weather like in winter in Canada?

7. Which countries are the neighbors of Switzerland?

VIII. Write the postcard, using the suggestions.

Here we/ Montreal/ a city/ Quebec, Canada. We/ be/ here/ five days. The weather/ terribly cold/ but we/ have/ great vacation. Montreal/ beautiful city/ and lots of people/ speak/ French / here. We/ stay/ mini-hotel by a lake. The hotel/ great/ and the food/ delicious. Yesterday/ go/ skiing. It/ very exciting/ and I/ take/ lots of photographs. Everything/ very nice/ but/ quite expensive here/ so I/ not buy/ many things. I/ go/ Quebec City/ next weekend. It/ not far/ here. How/ you? I hope/ you/ well. See/ soon.

Dear Francois,

Love,

Catherine

TEST YOURSELF

I. PRONUNCIATION

A. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. <u>cool</u> | b. <u>pool</u> | c. <u>cook</u> | d. <u>zoo</u> |
| 2. a. <u>vacation</u> | b. <u>facility</u> | c. <u>island</u> | d. <u>volcano</u> |
| 3. a. <u>tour</u> | b. <u>pour</u> | c. <u>your</u> | d. <u>course</u> |
| 4. a. <u>traveled</u> | b. <u>surprised</u> | c. <u>worked</u> | d. <u>climbed</u> |
| 5. a. <u>great</u> | b. <u>beach</u> | c. <u>station</u> | d. <u>break</u> |

B. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 6. a. paddle | b. canoe | c. travel | d. institute |
| 7. a. entertainment | b. oceanic | c. fertilizer | d. representative |
| 8. a. emergency | b. hospital | c. ambulance | d. handkerchief |
| 9. a. recognize | b. remember | c. deposit | d. immediate |
| 10. a. minimize | b. damage | c. natural | d. recycle |

II. VOCABULARY

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. What can we do to prevent people _____ throwing drink cans away?
a. in b. of c. on d. from
2. We haven't seen each other _____ last January.
a. for b. since c. on d. in
3. Are you free _____ Tuesday evening?
a. in b. at c. on d. for
4. Attempts to _____ him failed and he died soon afterward.
a. revive b. return c. revise d. reward
5. Compost is a wonderful natural _____.
a. substance b. material c. garbage d. fertilizer
6. All this unnecessary _____ creates so much waste.
a. pack b. package c. packing d. packaging
7. We have to get up early _____ late for class.
a. so as to be b. so that not to be
c. in order not to be d. so as to not be
8. Chicago is _____ right on the shore of Lake Michigan.
a. placed b. situated c. laid d. set
9. We are all _____ that you passed your English exam. Congratulations!
a. delighted b. relieved c. afraid d. certain
10. Excuse me! I'm doing my homework. _____ turning down your radio a bit?
a. Would you please b. Can you c. Could you d. Would you mind

B. Use the correct word form of the word given in each sentence.

11. Last summer we had an _____ trip to Sapa. (enjoy)
12. The waste from the chemical factory is very _____. (harm)
13. People are now concerned about _____ pollution. (environment)

14. Don't bend over suddenly because this can cause _____. (faint)
 15. Sa Pa is a wonderful _____ resort in Viet Nam. (mountain)

III. GRAMMAR AND STRUCTURE

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

- A new bridge over the river _____ at present.
 a. build b. is built c. is building d. is being built
- Peter wanted to win the race. He ran _____.
 a. so fast as he can b. fast as he could c. fast as he can d. as fast as he could
- _____ the canoe, we climbed in and paddled out to the middle of the lake.
 a. Hiring b. After hiring c. Hired d. We hired
- Do you mind _____ me a hand with this bag?
 a. give b. giving c. to give d. to giving
- He found a watch when he _____ in the street.
 a. walked b. was walking c. has walked d. has been walking
- Would you mind _____ the air-conditioner? ~No. Of course not.
 a. to turn on b. if I turn on c. my turn on d. if I turned on
- Look at these flowers! I think they need _____.
 a. water b. to water c. watering d. be watered
- I have a large room _____ the garden.
 a. overlooks b. overlooking c. overlooked d. to overlook
- Tom _____ the exam. He hasn't studied hard enough.
 a. won't pass b. isn't going to pass c. doesn't pass d. hasn't passed
- You have to work _____ for the coming exam.
 a. hardly b. more hardly c. hard d. more hard

B. Choose word or phrase that needs correcting.

- My family spent an interested holiday in Europe last summer.
 A B C D
- I was listening to the radio when the door bell was ringing.
 A B C D
- Thanh is always complaining about the heavy of my suitcase.
 A B C D
- The music was so loud that it could hear from a long way away.
 A B C D
- Do you mind if I asked you to bring your camera to the party?
 A B C D

IV. READING COMPREHENSION

A. Choose the most suitable word to complete the passage.

First-aid is very important. An ordinary person can (1)_____ a first-aid course and learn what to do (2)_____ the patient receives professional help. This might mean helping someone until an (3)_____ comes or it might mean giving first-aid and then taking the patient to a (4)_____. First-aid can keep a person (5)_____ until he or she reaches a hospital. Electric shock is a situation

(6)_____ first-aid can be used. If enough electricity enters the body, the person dies (7)_____. First-aid can bring him or her back to (8)_____. Another situation is (9)_____, or dying in water. A person trained in first-aid can help a person start to breathe after clearing the water (10)_____ the airway.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. take | b. give | c. start | d. do |
| 2. a. for | b. when | c. until | d. since |
| 3. a. wheelchair | b. stretcher | c. emergency | d. ambulance |
| 4. a. nurse | b. expert | c. doctor | d. instructor |
| 5. a. live | b. alive | c. living | d. lively |
| 6. a. where | b. what | c. when | d. why |
| 7. a. recently | b. actually | c. fortunately | d. immediately |
| 8. a. conscious | b. unconscious | c. consciousness | d. unconsciousness |
| 9. a. flooding | b. drowning | c. swamping | d. drowsy |
| 10. a. out of | b. out | c. up | d. off |

B. Read the passage, then choose the correct answers,

New York City is located in the southeastern part of New York State just east of New Jersey. The city was founded by the Dutch in 1624. At first it was called Fort Amsterdam, and then New Amsterdam. In 1664, the English took over the city and renamed it New York. With the population of more than 7 million in the city and 19 million in the metropolitan region, New York is the largest city in the United States. It is divided into five parts, which are Manhattan, the Bronx, Brooklyn, Queens, and Staten Island. The total area of these parts is 946 square kilometers. Visitors to New York are all attracted by places such as the Statue of Liberty, the Empire State Building, Times Square, Wall Street, and Broadway theatre district. New York is also where tourists can visit some world famous art galleries and museums.

- Where is New York City?
 - in the south of the USA
 - in New York State
 - in New Jersey
 - in Amsterdam
- Why was New York originally called New Amsterdam?
 - Because it lies in Amsterdam.
 - Because it used to be a fort.
 - Because it was founded by the Dutch.
 - Because it is impressive and magnificent.
- What is its population?
 - 5 million
 - 7 million
 - 19 million
 - 26 million
- Which of the followings is not a tourist attraction of New York?
 - Empire State Building
 - Statue of Liberty
 - Golden Gate Bridge
 - Broadway theater district
- Which of the followings is not true about New York City?
 - The city was named New York by the Dutch.
 - New York belonged to the Dutch when it was founded.
 - The area of New York City is 946 square kilometers.
 - New York has a lot of tourist attractions.

V. WRITING

Rewrite the following sentences so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

- Someone will translate this letter into Vietnamese.
This letter _____
- Traveling around the city in a day is impossible.
It _____
- Is it all right if I take a photograph?
Would you mind _____
- 'Shut the door but don't lock it,' she said to us.
She asked _____
- Air travel is faster than any other kinds of transport.
Air travel is the _____
- We haven't seen each other for over two years.
The last time _____
- I would like you to help me move this table.
Do you mind _____
- The water was so cold that the children could not swim in it.
The water was not _____
- Mai keeps leaving her pen at home.
Mai is _____
- She is not only a teacher, she is also a singer.
Not only _____

UNIT 13

FESTIVALS

I. Match the word in column A to its definition or meaning in column B.

- | A | B |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. council (n) | a. a song of joy |
| 2. upset (adj) | b. a traditional way of behaving or doing something |
| 3. yell (v) | c. the dry outer covering of grain |
| 4. festival (n) | d. a person who decides who has won a contest |
| 5. carol (n) | e. a group of people elected to manage affairs, make rules, ... |
| 6. husk (n) | f. unhappy, worried or disappointed about something |
| 7. judge (n) | g. a day or period of religious or other celebration |
| 8. custom (n) | h. to give a loud sharp cry of pain, excitement, anger |
1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____; 8. ____

II. Fill in each gap with one suitable compound noun in the box.

bullfighting	ice skating	bird-watching	weight-lifting
water-fetching	air-conditioning	zebra crossing	window-shopping

- My father likes _____. He spends lots of hours watching the birds.
- In _____, a traditional public entertainment in Spain, bulls are fought and usually killed in a bullring.

3. _____ is the activity of lifting heavy objects as a sport or as exercise.
4. She enjoys looking at goods displayed in shop windows, so she goes _____ very often.
5. _____ is the activity of skating on ice.
6. In the _____ contest, one person from each team has to run to the river to get the water.
7. _____ is a system that makes the air inside a building, room or vehicle cool.
8. Pedestrians must cross the street on _____.

III. Change the following sentences into passive voice.

1. Clement Clarke Moore wrote the poem "A visit from Saint Nicholas".

2. They performed Christmas songs for people in town.

3. Santa Claus gave children presents on Christmas Eve.

4. My father decorated the Christmas tree with colored lights.

5. Miss Thanh taught me to draw the Christmas cards.

6. Ba invited Liz to the rice-cooking festival.

7. They held the festival in the communal house yard.

8. The council leader awarded the first prize to the Mekong team.

IV. Put the verb into the correct form: *present simple or past simple, active or passive*.

Ex: The rice-cooking festival is held (hold) every two years.

1. It's a big factory. Five hundred people _____ (employ) there.
2. Water _____ (cover) most of the Earth's surface.
3. The letter _____ (post) a week ago and it _____ (arrive) yesterday.
4. The boat _____ (sink) quickly but fortunately everybody _____ (rescue).
5. Ron's parents _____ (die) when he was very young. He and his sister _____ (bring) up by their grandparents.
6. The gate _____ (lock) at 6.30 pm every day.
7. Sue _____ (bear) in London but she _____ (grow) up in the north of England.
8. We _____ (not/ play) football yesterday afternoon. The match _____ (cancel).
9. Originally the book _____ (write) in Spanish and a few years ago it _____ (translate) into English.
10. I saw an accident last night. Somebody _____ (call) an ambulance but nobody _____ (injure) so the ambulance _____ (not/ need).

V. Change the following sentences into the passive voice or active voice.

1. Does Egypt export cotton to many countries?

2. The Christmas trees were decorated and put at the front doors.
3. Somebody must do something for these poor men.
4. Did Jack London write the novel "Martin Idon"?
5. A new supermarket is going to be built next year.
6. They have just built a new church near my house.
7. People speak French and English in Canada.
8. Bell invented the telephone in 1876.
9. People say that he is the best doctor.
10. His painting will be exhibited for the first time by New Arts Gallery.

VI. Rewrite these sentences, using reported speech.

Ex: "I'm a student," Tom said.

Tom said (that) he was a student.

1. "I'm living in London now," Charles said.
2. "You are my best friends," Jane said to us.
3. "I don't know what Fred is doing," Johnny said to me.
4. "We are decorating our Christmas tree," Hoa said.
5. "I must go home now," he said to his friends.
6. "I can't go out after 8 p.m.," Hoa said.
7. "I will come and see you as soon as I can," she said to me.
8. "John wants to come here but he isn't very well," Judy said.
9. "I have to wear uniform when I am at school," Susan said.
10. "I'm going away for a few days. I'll phone you when I get back." Judy said to me.
11. "Run faster," Ba said to his teammate.
12. "Could you collect my new ao dai at the tailor round the corner?" Lan's mother said to her.

VII. Complete the sentences, using the correct form or tense of the verbs in the brackets.

1. Your poem _____ (should/ write) in English.
2. Yesterday afternoon, my father _____ (fix) his motorcycle while my mother _____ (cook) dinner.
3. It's a serious problem. I don't know how it _____ (can/ solve).
4. The teacher ordered Tom _____ (go) to the blackboard.
5. I learned to swim when _____ (be) very young. I _____ (teach) by my father.
6. He said that his mother _____ (not/ be) very well, so he _____ (can not/ go) to the party.
7. When we _____ (meet) George and Linda yesterday, we _____ (walk) through the park.
8. There is somebody walking behind us. I think we _____ (follow)
9. Paul told me that he _____ (wake) up feeling ill so he _____ (not/ go) to work.
10. My grandfather was a builder. He _____ (build) this house many years ago.

VIII. Fill in the blank with one suitable preposition.

1. My mother is very keen _____ growing roses.
2. John is extremely fond _____ music.
3. We thanked them _____ all their help.
4. Are you interested _____ a harvest festival?
5. Wine is made _____ grapes.
6. How many members participated _____ the rice-cooking contest?
7. The children are really looking forward _____ Tet holiday.
8. Santa Claus is based _____ the description of Saint Nicholas.
9. Two team members take part _____ the water-fetching contests.
10. They have to separate the rice _____ the husk and cook the rice.

IX. Complete the passage with the suitable words in the box.

relatives top preparations holiday put are although bought

Christmas is the biggest (1) _____ of the year in most of Britain. Celebrations start on 24 December, Christmas Eve, (2) _____ there have been several weeks of (3) _____ beforehand. The Christmas trees, presents, food, drinks and decorations have been (4) _____. Christmas cards have already been sent to friends and (5) _____. About a week before Christmas, people usually (6) _____ up their decorations and an angel on the (7) _____ of the Christmas tree. Family presents (8) _____ usually put under the tree.

X. Write, from the following sets of words and phrases, complete sentences. You can make all the necessary changes and additions.

1. you/ tidy/ the bedrooms/ yet?

2. Christmas songs / often/ perform/ the churches.

3. When/ the poem/ write?

4. The celebration/ will/ hold/ tomorrow.
5. The old man/ want/ visit/ village/ he/ born.
6. While/ I/ dinner/ phone/ ring.
7. She/ said/ she/ interest/ the rice-cooking contest.
8. The grand prize/ give/ team/ most/ points.

TEST FOR UNIT 13

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. leader | b. <u>s</u> pread | c. <u>g</u> reeting | d. <u>t</u> eam |
| 2. a. <u>C</u> hristmas | b. <u>ch</u> aracter | c. <u>sch</u> ool | d. <u>ch</u> urch |
| 3. a. design | b. describe | c. description | d. prize |
| 4. a. <u>u</u> rge | b. <u>u</u> pset | c. <u>h</u> usk | d. <u>r</u> ub |
| 5. a. fetched | b. based | c. washed | d. added |

II. Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank.

1. Millions of Christmas cards _____ every year.
a. send b. are sent c. are sending d. was sent
2. First prize was awarded _____ Jackie Stevens, the smallest girl on the team.
a. with b. on c. for d. to
3. Jane saw her old friend while she _____ the street.
a. crossed b. is crossing c. was crossing d. had crossed
4. He had his father _____ his Christmas card.
a. decorated b. decorating c. to decorate d. decorate
5. I saw him _____ the flowers in the garden.
a. watering b. watered c. be watered d. is watering
6. Paul is said _____ the brightest student in the class.
a. was b. to be c. being d. he was
7. A contest in which participants have to fetch water from the river is called _____ contest.
a. water-fetch b. fetching-water c. water-fetching d. fetch-water
8. The poem, _____ by Clement Clarke Moore, became popular in the USA.
a. that is written b. which is written c. which was written d. that was written
9. They tried to make a fire by _____ pieces of bamboo together.
a. adding b. separating c. rubbing d. taking
10. Hello, Joe. I didn't expect to see you today. Sonia said you _____ in hospital.
a. are b. were c. was d. should be

III. Fill in each blank with one appropriate word to complete the passage.

New Year is one of the most important (1) _____ in the United States. On New Year's Eve, most people go to the parties. At twelve o'clock (2) _____

night, everyone says "Happy New Year" and they (3)_____ their friends and relatives good luck. New Year's parties usually lasts a long (4)_____. Many people don't go home (5)_____ morning. Another holiday, Halloween, is mainly for children. On this holiday children (6)_____ as witches, ghosts or others. Most children go (7)_____ house to house asking for candy or fruit. If the people at the house do not give (8)_____ candy, the children will (9)_____ a trick on them. But this (10)_____ ever happens. Almost people give them candy or fruit.

IV. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. On Christmas Day, I often send my close friends _____ cards. (greet)
2. Paris is _____ for the Eiffel Tower. (fame)
3. He has been an active _____ in the contest. (participate)
4. The school drama society will give a _____ of Hamlet (perform)
5. Last night, the TV program was very _____. (interest)
6. I think these thick clothes are _____ for cold weather. (suit)
7. It's _____ in England to eat turkey on Christmas Day. (tradition)
8. Over 200 _____ entered the race. (compete)
9. Santa Claus is based on the _____ of Saint Nicholas in a poem. (describe)
10. Dad was putting up the Christmas _____. (decorate)

V. Choose word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. Thanks for invite me to the rice-cooking festival of your village.
A B C D
2. The judges try the finish products and the most delicious rice is the winner.
A B C D
3. The participants said that they have to separate the rice from the
A B C
husk and then cook the rice.
D
4. In 1823, Saint Nicholas was appeared in a poem called *A Visit From Saint Nicholas*.
A B C D
5. Eight hundred years ago, Christmas songs were perform for people in towns
A B C D
and villages.
6. The winners of the fire-making contest are the first ones making a fire.
A B C D
7. The character in the poem was a fat jolly man who wore a red suit
A B
and gave children presents in Christmas Eve.
C D
8. I'd rather to participate in the contest than watch it.
A B C D
9. Liz told that she was interested in the rice-cooking contest.
A B C D

10. An Englishman had someone designed a card to send Christmas greetings to his friends.

VI. Read the passage carefully, then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

Vietnam's New Year is celebrated according to the Lunar calendar. It is officially known as Tet Nguyen Dan, or Tet. It begins between January twenty-first and February nineteen. The exact date changes from year to year. Vietnamese people usually make preparations for the holiday several weeks beforehand. They tidy their houses, cook special food, clean and make offerings on the family altars. On the New Year's Eve, people sit up to midnight to see the New Year in, then they put on new clothes and give one another the greetings of the season. Tet lasts ten days. The first three days are the most important. Vietnamese people believe that how people act during those days will influence the whole year. As a result, they make every effort to avoid arguments and smile as much as possible.

1. Tet is also called Lunar New Year.
2. Tet usually occurs in late January or early February.
3. Vietnamese people make preparations for Tet several months beforehand.
4. On New Year's Eve people usually stay awake until midnight.
5. Vietnamese people believe that they will have good luck on the first three days of Tet.
6. To Vietnamese people, Tet Nguyen Dan is a joyful occasion.

VII. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. Clement Clarke Moore wrote the poem in 1823.
The poem _____
2. Christmas cards should be sent a week before Christmas Day.
You _____
3. "We are waiting for the school bus", said the children.
The children said _____
4. Nobody has used this machine for years.
This machine _____
5. Roses can't possibly grow in such poor ground.
It is impossible _____
6. They use recycled plastic to make toys and utensils.
Recycled _____
7. She said to me, "Turn off all the lights when you go out."
She _____
8. The last time I played tennis was in 1990.
I haven't _____
9. 'I'll give you my phone number so that you can call me' Jane said to me.
Jane told _____
10. Please don't smoke in the kitchen.
Would you mind _____

UNIT 14**WONDERS OF THE WORLD****I. Match the names of the famous world landmarks to the suitable places..**

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Taj Mahal | a. Cambodia |
| 2. Phong Nha Cave | b. Australia |
| 3. Golden Gate Bridge | c. England |
| 4. Great Wall of China | d. France |
| 5. Angkor Wat | e. Malaysia |
| 6. Petronas Twin Towers | f. The United States |
| 7. Great Barrier Reef | g. China |
| 8. Eiffel Tower | h. Egypt |
| 9. Big Ben | i. India |
| 10. The Pyramid of Cheops | j. Vietnam |

II. Complete the passage with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

design	be	recognize	visit	be	erect
--------	----	-----------	-------	----	-------

The Eiffel Tower (1)_____ in Paris, France. It (2)_____ by millions of people every year. It (3)_____ by Alexandre Eiffel (1832 - 1923). It (4)_____ in 1889 for the Paris exposition. Since that time, it (5)_____ the most famous landmark in Paris. Today it (6)_____ by people throughout the world.

III. Write complete sentences, using the verbs in the past passive form.

Ex: Eiffel Tower/ design/ Alexandre Gustave Eiffel/ 1889

Eiffel Tower was designed by Alexandre Gustave Eiffel in 1889.

- Angkor Wat/ build/ the early 12th century.

- Golden Gate Bridge/ open/ 1937.

- Grand Canyon/ excavate/ the Colorado River.

- The faces of four American presidents/ carve/ Gutzon Borglum/ 1927 to 1941.

- Empire State Building/ complete/ 1931.

- Temple of Artemis/ destroy/ the Goths/ AD 262.

- The Statue of Liberty/ make/ French people.

- Quoc Tu Giam/ establish/ 1076.

IV. Underline the verb form that best completes each of the following sentences.

- I like listening to music while I *am studying* / *was studying* / *was studied*.
- Her teacher was angry because she *wasn't finished* / *didn't finish* the homework.

3. We *were waking up/ were woken up* by a loud noise during the night.
4. John *was looking/ was looked* for some music CDs when he *was telling/ was told* it was closing time.
5. The exercise was very difficult, but everything *was answered/ could answer* correctly by nearly half of us.
6. Mom said we *could eat/ could be eaten* the meat and the chicken, but not the fish. It *wasn't ordered/ didn't order* for us. It was for Dad.
7. The accident *caused/ was caused* by the truck driver, who *was driving/ was driven* too fast.
8. I *was invited/ invited* into an office, offered a cup of tea, and *ask/ asking/ asked* to wait.
9. We *didn't play/ wasn't played/ wasn't playing* football yesterday. The match *cancelled/ was cancelled*.
10. A new bridge *was built/ is being built* across the river. Work *started/ was started* last year and the bridge *will expect/ is expected* to open next year

V. Turn the following questions into indirect speech.

Ex: Mary asked me, "Do you want to visit London?"

Mary asked me if/ whether I wanted to visit London.

1. She said, "Can you speak Spanish, Minh?"

2. Thanh said to her teacher, "Will I finish my exercise at home?"

3. Nien asked Hoa, "Do you have many new friends?"

4. My friend said, "Are you going to leave tomorrow?"

5. They said to us, "Must you go now?"

6. I asked Nam, "Are you free tonight?"

7. She asked the tourists, "Do you know the way to the station?"

8. John said, "Is Phong Nha Cave in southern Vietnam, Nhi?"

9. The visitors said, "Can we take photos?"

10. Daniel said to Jim, "Is there a café nearby?"

VI. Turn the following sentences into indirect speech.

1. "Don't forget to post the letter," he said to me.

2. "I am visiting Hoi An now," Nhi said.

3. "Can you open your bag, please?" said the customs officer.

4. "I don't know how to do this exercise," Johnny said.
5. "I must stay at home tomorrow," she said.
6. "Do you like this place?" Hoa asked Tim. "No, I don't," Tim said.
7. "The clock will never work again if you try to repair it," the man said to Nam.
8. "Is Mount Everest the highest mountain in the world?" the teacher asked Nga. "Yes, it is," she replied.
9. "Are you going to visit Phong Nha Cave?" Hoa said to Nga.
10. "Send me a postcard when you arrive in Paris," Jane said to Tim.

VII. Put the verb into the correct form, *to-infinitive* or *verb-ing*.

1. It was late, so we decided _____ (take) a taxi home.
2. We were hungry, so I suggested _____ (have) dinner early.
3. When I'm tired, I enjoy _____ (watch) television.
4. Would you like _____ (come) to dinner on Friday?
5. It started _____ (rain) when they left home.
6. Would you mind _____ (close) the door?
7. He stopped _____ (talk), then tried _____ (lift) a box into a lorry.
8. Don't forget _____ (turn off) the lights before _____ (go) out.
9. Can you help _____ (iron) the clothes? I hate _____ (do) the ironing.
10. I hope _____ (finish) _____ (paint) the house by the end of the week.

VIII. Complete the dialogues, using *What, Where, How, When, Who, Whether, How much* + one of the verbs in the box.

do	go	get	use	invite	say	buy	spend	pay
----	----	-----	-----	--------	-----	-----	-------	-----

1. A: Could you show me how to get to the station?
B: Sure. Go straight ahead. It's on your right.
2. A: Have you decided _____ for your holidays?
B: Yes, San Francisco.
3. A: I'll show you _____ this washing machine.
B: Thanks a lot.
4. A: When someone asks me about my plans for future, I don't know _____.
B: Really? You don't have any plan, do you?
5. A: I wonder _____ to my birthday party. Can you suggest some?
B: Certainly. Susan, Gary, Joanna, and some classmates.
6. A: Are you going to buy that sweater?
B: I don't know _____ it or not.

7. A: Would you know _____ if there was a fire in the building?
B: Of course. I've informed about this.
8. A: Tell me _____ the money to the bank.
B: Next month.
9. A: How much money should we spend on the Christmas present?
B: I've no idea _____ on it.

IX. Read the passage carefully, then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

Taj Mahal is the most famous of all India's ancient buildings and a prime monument of Mughal Art. It was built as the mausoleum of Arjumand Banu Bagam, known as Mumtaz Mahal, wife of Shan Jahan. The Taj Mahal was built on the Yamuna river in 1630. It took 22 years to construct; 20, 000 men were said to have been involved in the project. The tomb is over 73 meters high, and is lavishly decorated with Koranic inscriptions and carved reliefs.

- Taj Mahal is a(n) _____.
a. ancient temple b. ancient mausoleum
c. Mughal Art d. famous cemetery
- Taj Mahal was built for _____.
a. Mughal Art b. Shan Jahan c. Mumtaz Mahal d. India's ancestors
- Taj Mahal was completed in _____.
a. 1608 b. 1630 c. 1652 d. 1850
- Taj Mahal is decorated with _____.
a. words in the Koran b. floral designs
c. sunk carvings d. lavish structures

TEST FOR UNIT 14

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others.

- a. coral b. tower c. bored d. honore
- a. famous b. suggest c. tourist d. century
- a. hour b. honor c. honest d. how
- a. empire b. bridge c. liberty d. pyramid
- a. cave b. statute c. bay d. ancient

II. Choose the correct words or phrases to fill in the blanks.

- I must go now. I promised _____ late.
a. not being b. not to be c. to not be d. I won't be
- Tom _____ his hand when he was cooking the dinner.
a. burnt b. was burning c. has burnt d. burns
- She asked me _____ a driving licence.
a. if I have b. whether I have c. if I had d. whether I have had
- Have you decide where _____ for your holidays?
a. going b. to go c. will you go d. you went
- The Pyramid of Cheops is one of the seven _____ of the world.
a. Pyramids b. temples c. landmarks d. wonders

6. My father used _____ a lot, but now he stop _____.
 a. to smoke/ smoking b. to smoking/ smoking
 c. to smoke/ to smoke d. smoking/ smoking
7. They had their luggage _____ by the porter .
 a. carry b. carrying c. to carry d. carried
8. In order to keep fit, we should do exercises _____.
 a. regular b. regularly c. regulating d. regulation
9. Many people _____ that there were other wonders, which the ancient Greeks knew nothing about.
 a. blame b. wonder c. claim d. suggest
10. She is always asking me if the Great Wall of China _____ one of the wonders of the world.
 a. is b. was c. will be d. has been

III. Complete the passage with the suitable words from the box.

reveal ordinary pyramid scientific wonders its tomb found

The Great Pyramid of Giza was built as a (1)_____ of Pharaoh Cheops in 2720 BC. Although it was built a long time ago, (2)_____ construction makes it one of the true (3)_____ of the world. The four sides of the (4)_____ are put almost exactly on true north, south, east and west.

Explorations and detailed examinations of the base of the structure (5)_____ many interesting lines. Further (6)_____ study indicates that these represent a type of line of event - past, present and future. Many of the events have been interpreted and (7)_____ to coincide with known facts of the past.

Was this super struture made by (8)_____ beings, or one built by a race far superior to any known today?

IV. Change the following sentences into the opposite voice (active or passive).

1. Alexandre Eiffel designed the Eiffel Tower for the Paris World's Fair of 1889.

2. His painting will be exhibited for the first time by New Arts gallery.

3. People said that the Pyramids of Egypt is one of the wonders of the world.

4. They have to change the plan to Florida because of the rough weather.

5. He is being questioned about the stolen goods by the police.

6. Were you taught how to apply this theory by your teacher?

7. They usually hold the concerts at the university.

8. They have already finished their work as requested.

V. Choose the word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. I decided changing jobs because my boss makes me work overtime.
A B C D
2. Why would you rather stay home to go out tonight?
A B C D
3. Angkor Wat should really be known as a wonder because it is
largest temple in the world.
C D
4. Jim wanted to know could you call him and told him where to meet you.
A B C D
5. She didn't know how to run this machine, so she asked me help her.
A B C D
6. Many people claim that there were other wonders, that the ancient
Greeks knew nothing about.
D
7. Could you tell me when the next train leaves and where buy tickets?
A B C D
8. Many people claim that the Great Wall of China should be known
as one of the wonder of the world.
C D
9. I asked Nga whether Petronas Twin Tower in Malaysia was
the highest building of the world.
C D
10. The Eiffel Tower has designed by the French civil engineer Alexander
Gustave Eiffel for the Paris World's Fair of 1889.
C D

VI. Read the passage, then choose the correct answer.

Of all the natural wonders of the world, few are as spectacular as Niagara Falls. Located on the Niagara river along the border between the United States and Canada, Niagara actually consists of two falls, the American Falls and the Horseshoe Falls. The former is on the US side of the border, in the state of New York, while the latter is on the Canadian side. About 85% of the water in Niagara River flows over the Horseshoe Falls, which is the more impressive of the two falls.

About 10 million people visit the falls each year, most during the summer tourist season. Sightseers can ride steamers up close to the boiling water of the falls, or view *them* from parks on both sides of the river. Niagara Falls has long been a popular honeymoon destination for newlyweds.

- Which of the following is entirely on the US side?
 - Niagara River
 - American Falls
 - Niagara Falls
 - Horseshoe Falls
- It can be inferred from the passage that Horseshoe Falls _____.
 - is the larger of the two falls.
 - is the less impressive fall.
 - is in the state of New York
 - has 15% of the Niagara River flowing over its edge.
- According to the passage, where can people watch the falls?
 - From trains.
 - From airplanes
 - From parks or boats
 - From cars or buses
- In line 10, the word 'them' refers to _____.
 - steamers
 - sightseers
 - parks
 - waterfalls
- According to the passage, Niagara Falls _____.
 - is a favorite spot of newlyweds
 - generates very hot water
 - can be viewed from only one side of Niagara Falls
 - is only busy during the summer tourist season

**VII. Complete the second sentences so that it has the same meaning to the first.
Use the word in brackets.**

- The table and the desk are the same size. (big)

- Clair and her sister intend to spend summer holidays in Bali. (going)

- Could you tell me the way to the Oxford Street, please? (mind)

- Martin to Susan: Can you work on Saturdays? (asked)

- When I was young, I regularly travel around the country. (used)

- His hobby is to collect stamps. (fond)

- Etienne Lenoir made the first motor car. (by)

- Anna to Mike: Would you like to join me for lunch? (invited)

- Everyone agreed that the plan should go ahead. (it)

- People say exercise is good for you. (be)

I. Match each word in list A with its opposite in list B.

- | A | B |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. difficult | <u>2</u> small |
| 2. big | ___ safe |
| 3. healthy | ___ noisy |
| 4. interesting | ___ easy |
| 5. useful | ___ new |
| 6. dangerous | ___ ugly |
| 7. quiet | ___ sad |
| 8. amusing | ___ ill |
| 9. beautiful | ___ boring |
| 10. old | ___ useless |

II. Complete each sentence with the suitable word in the box.

monitor	computers	freshman	knob	guarantee	printer
skeptical	library	bulletin board	technology	time-consuming	

1. A _____ is a machine for printing text onto paper.
2. This machine is still under _____ so the manufacturer will repair it.
3. Some _____ can work 50,000 times faster than a man.
4. Some of the more _____ jobs can be done by machines.
5. Adjust the _____ if the screen of the _____ is too dark.
6. Harry is in the first year at university. He is a _____.
7. They post messages on the _____ and find other people who want to talk about the same topic.
8. I'm rather _____ about his chances of winning.
9. Many students are sitting and reading books and magazines in the _____.
10. This _____ enables computers to read handwriting.

III. Complete the passage with the appropriate words connected with the subject of computer.

A computer has a (1) _____ similar to that of the typewriter. The machine has a (2) _____ at the back so that you can connect it to a (3) _____ which has a (4) _____ like a television. We often use a (5) _____ which someone has written. All the information is stored on (6) _____, and at the side of the computer there is a (7) _____. A (8) _____ is used to copy the information onto paper.

IV. Write sentences, using the present perfect with *already* and *yet*.

Ex: I/ buy/ a jacket.

I have already bought a jacket.

He/ not finish/ his project.

He hasn't finished his project yet.

1. David/ leave/ the party.

2. I/ not receive/ his letter.
3. The manager/ come/ the office?
4. We/ see/ that film.
5. Laura/ not find/ a job.
6. It/ stop/ raining?
7. He/ drink/ three bottles of beer.
8. We/ not hear/ anything from them.
9. you/ post/ the letter?
10. They/ go/ to Brazil.

V. Complete the dialogues, using the present perfect of the verbs in brackets.

1. A: Would you like something to eat?
B: No, thanks. I have just had lunch. (just/ have)
2. A: Do you know where Julia is?
B: Yes, I _____ her in the street. (just/ meet)
3. A: What time is he going?
B: He _____ . (already/ go)
4. A: What's in the newspaper today?
B: I don't know. I _____ . (not/ read/ yet)
5. A: Is Ann coming to the movie theater with us?
B: No, she _____ that film. (already/ see)
6. A: Are your friends here yet?
B: Yes, they _____ . (just/ arrive)
7. A: What does Tim think about your plan?
B: I _____ . (not/ tell/ yet)
8. A: Shall I phone to reserve a table?
B: I _____ it. (already/ do)

VI. Complete the dialogues. Use the past simple or present perfect tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. A: _____ (you/ ever/ connect) a printer?
B: I _____ (know) how to connect it since I _____ (be) twelve.
2. A: Ben _____ (break) his leg.
B: Really? How _____ (that/ happen)?
A: He _____ (fall) off a ladder.
3. A: Ow! I _____ (burn) myself.
B: How _____ (you/ do) that?

- A: I _____ (pick) up a hot dish.
4. A: Mark _____ (not be) here recently.
B: Really? When _____ (he/ go)?
A: He _____ (leave) here three months ago.
5. A: Do you have Ann's address?
B: Well, she (give) _____ me her address but I'm afraid I (lose) _____ it.
6. A: _____ (you/ hear) anything from Jane?
B: No. We _____ (not/ receive) any letter from her since she _____ (leave) four months ago.
7. A: _____ (you/ see) the film *Harry Potter* yet?
B: Yes, I _____ (already/ see) it.
A: When _____ (you/ see) it?
B: I _____ (see) it last month.

VII. Which is correct?

- Alexander Graham Bell invented/ has invented the telephone.
- This is the first time I saw/ have seen a cricket match.
- I just bought/ I've just bought a new computer. Do you want to see it?
- Did you read/ Have you read any of Jack London's novels?
- I'm looking for Tommy. Did you see/ Have you seen him?
- We didn't see/ haven't seen each other for ages.
- Jenny left/ has left school in 1998.
- We didn't go/ haven't gone to a concert since 1998.
- He wasn't/ hasn't been at work yesterday.
- Where were you/ have you been born?
- My mother grew/ has grown up in Scotland.
- I've written/ I wrote the letter, but I haven't finished/ didn't finish it yet.
- Do you know about Susan? She left/ has left her home for ten years.
- It isn't a very good party. Most people already went/ have already gone home.
- Christmas was the last time we had/ have had a party.

VIII. Fill in each blank with an appropriate preposition.

- Nam turned _____ his computer, but it didn't work.
- I disagree _____ you. I think computers are very useful.
- I'm having problems _____ my computer.
- If your computer doesn't work, you should check if the plug has come _____ the socket.
- All the information students need is now stored _____ the university's computers.
- Not all people think positively about the new 'method of study _____ campus.
- The new university is different _____ the old one.
- Computers are necessary _____ first-year student.

IX. Read the following passage and choose the most suitable answers.

It's not enough that the computer is invading our work and play worlds. It has started to invade our shopping world as well. Shopping by computer, or teleshopping, is a phenomenon that is beginning to appear in homes, stores, hotels, and even airports. The service allows the shopper to look at electronic catalogs and to order items, such as dishes, clothing or concert tickets, without leaving the computer. This modern way of shopping is convenient, especially for busy people.

1. The computer is now invading _____.
a. our work and play world b. our shopping world
c. our work, play and shopping world d. our business world
2. Shopping by computer is also called _____.
a. teleshopping b. window shopping
c. shopping mall d. duty-free shopping
3. The service allows the shopper to _____.
a. see the goods b. make a bargain
c. shop on-line d. buy low-priced goods
4. Internet shopping is convenient for _____.
a. people who don't have much free time b. people who have to travel a lot
c. people who do the housework d. people who don't like shopping
5. According to the passage, you can't do your teleshopping without _____.
a. a television b. a shopping list c. a computer d. a telephone

TEST FOR UNIT 15

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. <u>pr</u> oblem | b. <u>s</u> ocket | c. <u>c</u> omputer | d. <u>d</u> ocument |
| 2. a. <u>r</u> equired | b. <u>o</u> pened | c. <u>p</u> lugged | d. <u>w</u> orked |
| 3. a. <u>u</u> niversity | b. <u>c</u> ampus | c. <u>c</u> omputer | d. <u>s</u> tudent |
| 4. a. <u>i</u> nternet | b. <u>m</u> onitor | c. <u>p</u> rinter | d. <u>i</u> con |
| 5. a. <u>m</u> ouse | b. <u>f</u> ound | c. <u>p</u> ower | d. <u>th</u> rough |

II. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. computer | b. guarantee | c. university | d. education |
| 2. a. document | b. technology | c. company | d. monitor |
| 3. a. telephone | b. library | c. equipment | d. campuses |
| 4. a. available | b. delicious | c. amusing | d. entertaining |
| 5. a. concern | b. access | c. impact | d. skeptical |

III. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence.

1. Please turn _____ the computer when you've finished your report.
a. on b. off c. in d. over
2. That printer is _____ guarantee so the company will repair it.
a. on b. in c. of d. under

3. Sue had her bike _____ by her father.
a. fix b. fixing c. to fix d. fixed
4. When he realized I _____ at him, he _____ away.
a. looked - was turning b. was looking - turned
c. was looking - was turning d. looked - turned
5. _____ a computer when you was living in the country?
a. Have you had b. Do you have c. Did you have d. Were you having
6. 'Would you like to go to the band concert?' 'Thanks, but I _____.
a. saw it yet b. have seen it already
c. have seen it yet d. already saw it.
7. Do you think chatting on Internet is _____?
a. time-consuming b. consuming-time c. time-consumed d. consumed-time
8. Nowadays, first-year students _____ to have access to a computer.
a. are requiring b. are required c. have required d. will be required
9. "I don't think technology will replace schools." - "_____
a. So do I. b. I do, too. c. Neither do I. d. I do either.
10. Technology now means students can get a degree without _____.
a. to be on campus b. being in campus
c. to be in a campus d. being on campus

IV. Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in brackets.

The computer - one of the most marvellous (1)_____ (invent) in our modern age has proved to be (2)_____ (extreme) (3)_____ (help) to man's life. A computer can not only solve the most complex math problems with lightning speed and perfect (4)_____ (accurate), but also gather the wide range of (5)_____ (inform) for (6)_____ (variety) purposes in many fields. Nowadays, the computer always plays an (7)_____ (importance) role that is (8)_____ (change).

V. Choose the word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. It's already 10:00, but Teri hasn't finished her homework already.
A B C D
2. This hotel has been already in business for fifty years.
A B C D
3. Study is no longer restrict to just one location.
A B C D
4. Nam aksed if there is anything wrong with the printer.
A B C D
5. Either Nam or his father know how to connect the printer.
A B C D
6. Albert Einstein was the scientist who has developed the theory of relativity.
A B C D
7. Have you eaten a lot of sweets when you were a child?
A B C D
8. The printer won't work if you don't connect it proper.
A B C D

VI. Match the sentences in column A to the appropriate responses in column B.

- | A | B |
|--|---|
| 1. I think computers are very useful. | a. No. I haven't been familiar with the keyboard yet. |
| 2. Do you know how to use a computer? | b. Neither do I. |
| 3. Can you type fast? | c. I have no idea. I haven't played it yet. |
| 4. I prefer computer games to video games. | d. Yes. I've just studied to use it for two months. |
| 5. What do you think of this new computer game? | e. So do I. |
| 6. I don't like chatting on the Internet. | f. Yes, but shopping on-line is very convenient, especially for people who lead busy lives. |
| 7. I think the printer is broken. It's doesn't work. | g. I disagree. I think the video games are more exciting. |
| 8. I don't believe in the purchase on the Internet. | h. No. You didn't connected it properly. |

VII. Choose the correct word for each space from the list in the box.

hard networks necessary talks studying libraries schools better teachers need
--

Some people believe that soon schools will no longer be (1)_____. These people say that because of the Internet and other new technology, there is no longer any (2)_____ for school buildings, formal classes, or (3)_____. Perhaps this will be true one day, but it is (4)_____ for me to imagine a world without (5)_____. In fact, we need to look at how we can use new technology to make schools (6)_____, not to eliminate them.

We should invent a new kind of school that is linked to (7)_____, museums, science centers, laboratories, and even companies. Experts could give (8)_____ on video or over the Internet. TV (9)_____ and local stations could develop programming about things students are actually (10)_____ in school.

VIII. Arrange the following words to make meaningful sentences. Do not omit any word and you can make any change if it is necessary. Each sentence begin with the word in capital.

- computer/ ever/ most/ It/ interesting/ be/ play/ game/ I.

- printer/ be/ for/ not use/ a long time/ This/ out of order/ you/ it/ because.

- use/ lines/ telephone/ can/ networked/ Computers/ modems

- information/ school/ our/ All/ store/ the computer/ now.

- users/ messages/ information/ send/ receive/ Without/ computers/ can/ through/ telephone lines/ leave/ their

6. computers/ link/ All/ main/ our/ network

IX. Express and respond to opinions about the things. Use these given adjectives: interesting, boring, exciting, good, dangerous, terrible, entertaining, violent, useful, noisy.

1. A: (careless driving)

I think careless driving is very dangerous for one's life.

B: (agree) You're right.

2. A: (computer games)

B: (disagree)

3. A: (sports activities)

B: (agree)

4. A: (TV programs)

B: (disagree)

5. A: (rock music)

B: (agree)

6. A: (computers)

B: (agree)

7. A: (violent films)

B: (disagree)

UNIT 16

INVENTIONS

I. Match each word or phrase in column A to its definition in column B.

A

1. wood pulp (n)
2. conveyor belt (n)
3. prisoner (n)
4. mold (n)
5. to defrost (v)
6. official (n)
7. manufacturing process (n)
8. to liquefy (v)

B

- a. an empty container with a particular shape.
- b. the process of making things in large quantities.
- c. to make something become a liquid.
- d. a continuous moving belt used for transporting products in a factory.
- e. someone who is kept in prison as punishment for a crime.
- f. a substance made from very small pieces of crushed wood, used for making paper.
- g. to make something no longer frozen.
- h. a person who hold a public office.

1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____; 8. ____

II. Complete the sentences with the passive form of the verbs from the box.

make grind store remove touch drain use invent bring award

1. Coffee beans _____ usually _____ into powder.
2. Look! Your bureau _____ to another site.

3. Wine _____ from grapes.
4. The computer _____ since 1946.
5. This is the storehouse where the cocoa beans _____.
6. All the oil _____ from the engine by the mechanic half an hour ago.
7. Children, that button cannot _____! It's very dangerous.
8. The zipper _____ by W.L. Judson in 1893.
9. Marie Curie _____ a Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1911.
10. Maize _____ into Viet Nam by Phung Khac Hoan in the 16th century

III. Fill in the blanks with the suitable words.

Ex: A printer is a machine for printing text onto paper.

1. "Could you help me vacuum the stairs, Harry?" "Sure. Where's the _____?"
2. Last night I was sleeping when the _____ rang. There was a strange voice on line - wrong number!
3. She reheated the soup in the _____.
4. A _____ is an electrical device for toasting slices of bread.
5. "You should dry your hair before going to bed." "I know, but my _____ has broken down."
6. "May I help with the washing-up?" "No, thanks. I have just bought a _____."
7. I rang the _____ at the door, but there was no answer. Maybe there was nobody at home.
8. Hoa enjoys sewing. She had her mother teach her how to use a _____.

IV. Change the sentences into passive voice.

1. Alexander Bain invented the facsimile in 1843.

2. They dry the beans in the sun.

3. People can make payment at any post office.

4. How do people learn English?

5. They are going to build a new supermarket next year.

6. Where did you take these photographs?

7. The foreman is showing the students around the factory.

8. I will translate the instructions into French.

9. Has the council postponed the meeting?

10. They were cleaning the room when I arrived.

11. We haven't finished our homework yet.

12. People say the computer is one of the most important inventions.

V. Active or passive? Put the verbs into the correct form.

1. There is somebody walking behind us. I think we _____ (follow).

2. Every time I print a document, the printer _____ (break) down.

3. Apples _____ (say) to be good for our health.

4. Hoa _____ (bear) in Hue but she _____ (grow) up in Ha Noi.

5. "Is Thanh's house still for sale?" "No, it _____ (sell) since last month."

6. The application form should _____ (send) today so that it _____ (arrive) the next day.

7. How _____ cakes _____ (make)? _____ you _____ (ever/make) cakes?

8. I _____ (see) an accident last night. Somebody _____ (call) an ambulance but nobody _____ (injure) so the ambulance _____ (not/ need).

9. "Who _____ (invent) the microphone?" "It _____ (invent) by D.E. Hughes in 1878."

10. The printer _____ (break) down yesterday, but now it's OK. It _____ (work) again; it _____ (repair).

VI. Put the sentences below in the correct order to produce the instruction to make "Jade Palace Fried Rice". Use the sequence markers: *first, second, next, then, after that, finally* to complete the instruction.

_____ Enjoy your fried rice!

_____ Pour in a little soy sauce and stir again.

_____ Fry the chopped vegetables in the wok or big frying pan.

1 Put the rice in a pot with two cups of water. Boil until the water is gone.

_____ Add the egg and mix well.

_____ Wash and chop the cabbage, carrot, green onions, and bean sprouts.

_____ Add the rice and stir. Fry together a few minutes.

JADE PALACE FRIED RICE

a cup of rice	one carrot	two cups of water	a few green onions
some cabbage	some bean sprouts	a little soy sauce	one egg

VII. Underline the correct preposition.

1. A Chinese official made paper *of/ in/ from/ on* wood pulp in 105.
2. The first papermaking machine was invented *at/ in/ on/ from* the late 1700s *from/ of/ by/ to* a Frenchman.
3. The factory foreman is showing them *round/ to/ in/ into* the factory.
4. "What is this button *in/ beside/ like/ for*?" "It's used to operate the machine."
5. "Who(m) was the helicopter invented *for/ of/ from/ by*?" "Igor Sikorsky"
6. Don't go away. Come and stand *besides/ inside/ beside/ next* me.
7. Cocoa butter is added, along *to/ of/ with/ in* sugar, vanilla and milk.
8. Pour a little milk *in/ from/ out/ into* my cup of coffee, please.

VIII. Read the passage, and then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

Scientists define a robot as a machine body which is operated by a computer, working independently on human and capable of doing different jobs. Robots are invented to make our work easier, by moving materials, tools and other objects through programmed actions.

Most robots look like giant arms, having the movement of the human arm and hand. The robots are linked to a computer that controls them. A scientist can make the robots useful for a variety of tasks. Robots are designed to move in different ways. They can turn, pick up objects and put them down. To do all these, the robots can move from side, up and down, forwards and back.

- define: *định nghĩa*

- programmed action: *hành động đã được lập trình*

1. Robots are actually people.
2. Robots cannot work when there is nobody to look after.
3. Robots help people to work.
4. Robots are controlled by computers.
5. Robots can be made to be useful for every task.
6. Robots can do many of the things humans do.

TEST FOR UNIT 16

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. <u>show</u> | b. <u>follow</u> | c. <u>how</u> | d. <u>throw</u> |
| 2. a. <u>factory</u> | b. <u>liquify</u> | c. <u>pretty</u> | d. <u>candy</u> |
| 3. a. <u>sugar</u> | b. <u>crush</u> | c. <u>button</u> | d. <u>husk</u> |
| 4. a. <u>pour</u> | b. <u>touch</u> | c. <u>bought</u> | d. <u>thought</u> |
| 5. a. <u>cooked</u> | b. <u>washed</u> | c. <u>faxed</u> | d. <u>weighed</u> |

II. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. I _____ a film that interested me so much as the one I _____ last night.
 a. never watched/ watched b. have never watched/ watched
 c. watched/ have watched d. never have watched/ watched
2. The first papermaking machine _____ in the late 1700s by a Frenchman.
 a. invented b. was inventing
 c. was invented d. has been invented
3. Mr. Roberts supervises and directs other workers in the factory. He's a(n) _____.
 a. engineer b. manager c. mechanic d. foreman
4. I'd like to borrow this book. Has Anna read it _____?
 a. recently b. yet c. already d. just
5. _____ helping me with the washing?
 a. Would you mind b. Would you like
 c. Could you d. Would you please
6. Our solar system is in the galaxy _____ the Milky Way.
 a. calling b. called c. call d. is called
7. He wants to return to the village _____ he was born.
 a. which b. when c. where d. what
8. Tim said he _____ a chocolate factory then.
 a. visited b. are visiting c. has visited d. was visiting
9. Mr. Roberts warned the children _____ that button.
 a. not touch b. not to touch c. to not touch d. not touching
10. People learned how _____ paper many centuries ago.
 a. was made b. is making c. to make d. making

III. Fill in each blank with an appropriate word.

Nowadays, a lot of important inventions are carried (1)_____ by scientists (2)_____ for large industrial firms. However, there are still opportunities (3)_____ other people to invent various things. In Britain, there is a weekly TV (4)_____ which attempts to show all the devices which people have (5)_____ recently. The people organizing the program receive information about 700 inventions (6)_____ year. New ideas can be developed (7)_____ private inventors. However, it is important to consider these (8)_____: Will it work? Will it be wanted? Is it new?

IV. Choose the word or phrase that needs correcting.

1. A Chinese made paper to wood pulp in the year 105.
A B C D
2. Would you mind if I ask you a question?
A B C D
3. The house hasn't been repaired since it built.
A B C D
4. Hoa had Tim to translate the instructions into Vietnamese.
A B C D
5. They met her while they crossed the street.
A B C D
6. The dynamo invented by Faraday when he was 40.
A B C D
7. The foreman warned the children not touch that button.
A B C D
8. I haven't seen her since we have left school.
A B C D
9. The first important book which was printing by Gutenberg was published
A B C D
in 1456.
10. The procedure is almost the same with it was 100 years ago.
A B C D

V. Write questions for the underlined words.

1. Penicillin was discovered by Sir Alexander Fleming.

2. The first postage stamps were made in 1840.

3. A new road will be built across the International Park next month.

4. The fruit harvest is fermented for three to nine days.

5. Paper is made from wood pulp.

6. The Pasteur Institute was founded in Paris in 1888.

7. Sandra has just been sent a lot of information about the meeting.

8. She was taken to the hospital by an ambulance.

VI. Use the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. The computer is one of the most _____ of the 20th century. (invent)
2. There's some chocolate beside the _____ belt. (convey)
3. Then the _____ is ground, rolled and poured into molds. (mix)
4. This wood pulp is also cleaned and _____ whitened. (chemistry)
5. Their latest car has just gone into _____. (produce)
6. This company is one of the leading computer _____.
(manufacture)
7. Gordon Gould is an American _____ who invented laser. (invent)
8. Water is the clear and colorless _____. (liquify)

VII. Read the passage carefully, then choose the correct answers.

THE ZIPPER

The zipper is a wonderful invention. How did people ever live without zippers? Zippers are very common, so we forget that they are wonderful. They are very strong, but they open and close very easily. They come in many colors and sizes.

Whitcomb L. Judson invented the zipper in 1893. He was an engineer in Chicago. He called the zipper a slide fastener. However, it didn't stay closed very well. This was embarrassing, and people didn't buy many of them. Then Dr. Gideon Sundback from Sweden solved this problem. Dr. Sundback put the hooks on the strips of cloth. The cloth holds all the hooks in place. They don't come apart very easily. This solved the problem of the first zipper.

- zipper: *phéc-mô-tuy-a*, *khóa kéo* - hook: *cái móc*

1. Zippers open and close by _____.
a. shooting b. bending c. sliding d. choosing
2. Mr. Judson was an _____.
a. engineer b. inventor c. American d. a, b and c
3. Mr. Judson didn't sell many zippers because _____.
a. it was hard to open and close them b. people liked rows of button
c. they came open very easily d. they had cloth strips
4. Dr. Sundback was _____.
a. a Swede b. from Chicago c. an American d. b and c
5. A zipper has two _____ of cloth.
a. rows b. fasteners c. strips d. buttons
6. Dr. Sundback _____.
a. invented the zipper b. made the zipper better
c. invented the button hook d. invented the slide fastener

VIII. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. Is it all right if I take some photographs?

Would you mind _____

2. Nobody has used this room for years.

This room _____

3. It is two months since I saw her.

I haven't _____

4. Tax free goods can be bought before you get on the plane.

You _____

5. The repairman is going to repair my car next week.

We are going to have _____

6. "We like this place," the tourists said.

The tourists said _____

7. It was such an interesting film that we watched it several times.

The film _____

8. "Where are you going next weekend?" An said to Hanh.

An asked _____

TEST YOURSELF

I. PRONUNCIATION

A. Choose the word that has the underlined pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. prisoner | b. visitor | c. Chinese | d. inventor |
| 2. a. <u>what</u> | b. <u>who</u> | c. <u>where</u> | d. <u>which</u> |
| 3. a. <u>wood</u> | b. <u>look</u> | c. <u>cook</u> | d. <u>blood</u> |
| 4. a. <u>China</u> | b. <u>check</u> | c. <u>chemist</u> | d. <u>chocolate</u> |
| 5. a. <u>receive</u> | b. <u>neighbor</u> | c. <u>weight</u> | d. <u>wait</u> |

B. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| 6. a. liquify | b. appliance | c. helicopter | d. document |
| 7. a. mixture | b. wonder | c. perform | d. heritage |
| 8. a. guarantee | b. properly | c. chocolate | d. printer |
| 9. a. computer | b. ingredient | c. available | d. bulletin |
| 10. a. invent | b. decorate | c. participate | d. design |

II. VOCABULARY

a. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. She has worked as a secretary _____ she graduated from college.
a. since b. until c. before d. while
2. We are very fond _____ the game 20 questions.
a. in b. at c. with d. of

3. Could you turn the music _____ a little. It's too loud!
a. on b. off c. down d. up
4. Glass is usually _____ sand.
a. made from b. made of c. made by d. made with
5. The Pyramid of Cheops in Egypt is one of seven _____ of the world.
a. landmarks b. historic places
c. famous sights d. wonders
6. She asked the guide _____ Phong Nha Cave was the most beautiful cave in Vietnam.
a. where b. which c. whether d. what
7. The statue was _____ out of stone.
a. cut b. designed c. carved d. sliced
8. They worked hard _____ they could pass the final examination.
a. since b. because c. although d. so that
9. The winner of the contest was given a(n) _____ for her excellent performance.
a. bonus b. reward c. fine d. award
10. _____ was the fountain pen invented? - Lewis Waterman.
a. Who b. By who c. Whom d. By whom

B. Choose the correct form of the word to complete the sentence.

11. Radio, telegraph, television and other inventions brought _____ for newspaper.
a. compete b. competence c. competition d. competitor
12. It's one of the most _____ trips I've ever had.
a. enjoying b. enjoyable c. enjoyed d. enjoyably
13. He has _____ bought a new house.
a. recent b. recency c. recently d. recense
14. Faraday is one of the greatest _____ in history.
a. invents b. inventions c. inventive d. inventors
15. Scientific progress supplies us with _____.
a. convenient b. conveniences c. inconvenient d. inconveniences

III. GRAMMAR AND STRUCTURE

A. Choose the word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. I am looking forward _____ from you.
a. to hear b. hearing c. to hearing d. to be heard
2. The flight to London _____ for half an hour.
a. delayed b. is delayed c. has delayed d. has been delayed
3. Who is _____ player in the team?
a. good b. better c. the best d. well
4. The Angkor Thon used _____ the royal capital city.
a. to being b. to be c. be d. being

5. When I came to visit her last night, she _____ a bath.
a. is having b. was having c. has had d. had
6. Between the two boys, Harry is _____.
a. smarter b. smartest c. the smarter d. the smartest
7. _____ your homework finished last night?
a. Was b. Did c. Are d. Do
8. The boy forgot _____ the newspaper for his father.
a. buy b. to buy c. buying d. bought
9. We _____ him for months now.
a. don't see b. didn't see c. haven't seen d. won't see
10. My parents wouldn't let me _____ up late when I was a child.
a. stay b. staying c. to stay d. to be stay

B. Choose the word or phrase that needs correcting.

11. They happily looked at the children play in the yard.
A B C D
12. This is the second time I took part in the rice-cooking contest.
A B C D
13. When Andrew saw the question, he was knowing the answer immediately.
A B C D
14. We have not decided how to deal with the new problem already.
A B C D
15. Lots of information are stored in the computer.
A B C D

IV. READING COMPREHENSION

A. Choose the most suitable word to complete the passage.

The computer is undoubtedly one of the most amazing and important (1)_____ of the twentieth century. Boring or (2)_____ jobs which, in the past, would have been (3)_____ out by hundreds of workers can now (4)_____ by one small computer. However, the (5)_____ of the computer has not been entirely problem-free. Many people feel that we are already too dependent (6)_____ computers. They think that computers themselves are (7)_____ too powerful, and that people are no (8)_____ in control of them.

1. a. invents b. inventors c. inventions d. inventories
2. a. time-saving b. time-sharing c. time-limit d. time-consuming
3. a. carried b. taken c. brought d. turned
4. a. do b. make c. be done d. be made
5. a. way b. use c. usage d. means
6. a. in b. at c. on d. of
7. a. becoming b. running c. coming d. keeping
8. a. harder b. faster c. earlier d. longer

B. Read the passage and then choose the correct answers.

The Statue of Liberty, one of America's most familiar image, is on an island in New York Harbor. It is a symbol of freedom. It was a gift to American people from French to show the friendship between the two nations. This is the statue of a woman who is wearing a loose robe and a crown on her head. Her right hand holds a burning torch, and her left hand holds a tablet with the date July 4, 1776 on it. The statue weighs 205 tons and is 46 meters high. It stands on a stone base. The base and the pedestal increase the height of the monument to 93 meters. The statue was completed in 1884 in France, and then transported to America in 1886. Tourists can visit the statue from 9.30 am to 5 pm daily except Christmas Day.

- friendship: *thân hữu nghị*

- crown: *vương miện*

- base: *đế; chân*

- tablet: *biển (tấm gỗ, sắt... trên có chữ viết, hình vẽ,...)*

1. The Statue of Liberty is in _____.
a. the center of New York city b. New York Harbor
c. the suburbs of New York City d. Los Angeles
2. The statue was made by _____.
a. French people b. American people
c. British people d. New York people
3. The statue was made because _____.
a. French people wanted to show their friendship with American people
b. American people wanted to show their friendship with French people
c. French people wanted to show their aspiration for freedom
d. American people wanted to guarantee liberty
4. The height of the monument is _____.
a. 46 meters b. 47 meters c. 93 meters d. 139 meters
5. Tourists can visit the Statue of Liberty _____.
a. every day, including Christmas Day b. from Monday to Friday
c. every day, but not on Christmas Day d. on Christmas Day
6. In the USA, the date July 4 is _____.
a. Independence Day b. Thanksgiving Day
c. Labour Day d. Boxing Day

V. WRITING

A. Choose the sentence that has the same meaning as the root one.

1. They haven't seen their uncle for ten years.
a. The last time they saw their uncle was ten years ago.
b. Ten years ago they first saw their uncle.
c. Ten years is a long time for them to see their uncle.
d. It's ten years when their uncle first saw them.

2. 'Can I borrow your ruler, Lan?' asked Viet.
 - a. Lan asked if Viet could lend her his ruler.
 - b. Viet asked whether he could borrow Lan's ruler.
 - c. Viet wanted to lend Lan his ruler.
 - d. Lan wanted to borrow Viet's ruler.
3. I'll be happy to give you a lift.
 - a. Would you mind giving me a lift?
 - b. Giving me a lift will make you happy.
 - c. I'll be happy if you give me a lift.
 - d. I don't mind giving you a lift.
4. We have never seen a prettier flower display.
 - a. This flower display isn't as pretty as those we've ever seen.
 - b. This is the prettiest flower display we've ever seen.
 - c. This flower display is prettier than some we've ever seen.
 - d. This is one of the prettiest flower displays we've ever seen.
5. Hoa is better at English than Linh.
 - a. Hoa isn't as good at English as Linh.
 - b. Linh isn't so good at English as Hoa.
 - c. Hoa is worse at English than Linh.
 - d. Linh isn't as bad as English as Hoa.

B. Complete each of the following sentences, using the words given.

6. Jame Watt/ who/ Scottish scientist/ invent/ steam engine.

7. My father/ be/ unemployed/ since/ he/ leave/ his job.

8. Our beautiful forests/ will/ destroy/ if/ not do/ anything/ preserve.

9. He/ said/ he/ have to/ work/ harder/ coming exam

10. We/ extreme/ tired/ after/ trip/ so/ sleep/ bus/ way/ home

THE SECOND-SEMESTER EXAMINATION

Time allowed: 45 minutes

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. <u>heat</u> | b. <u>seat</u> | c. <u>great</u> | d. <u>meet</u> |
| 2. a. <u>churches</u> | b. <u>chemist</u> | c. <u>chair</u> | d. <u>change</u> |
| 3. a. <u>science</u> | b. <u>field</u> | c. <u>believe</u> | d. <u>movie</u> |

II. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

1. a. interesting b. surprising c. delicious d. successful
2. a. environment b. facility c. vacation d. souvenir

III. Choose the word or phrase that best complete each of the sentence.

1. We used to spend a lot of time _____.
a. travel b. to travel c. traveling d. travel
2. Many young people are fond _____ playing football.
a. in b. on c. with d. of
3. It's about time you _____ harder for the exam.
a. work b. worked
c. are working d. have worked
4. The next train _____ at 7 p.m, so get ready now.
a. leaves b. is leaving
c. will leave d. has left
5. No one else in the class plays the guitar _____ John.
a. as well b. as far as
c. so well as d. as soon as
6. The waste from the chemical factory is extremely _____.
a. harmed b. unharmed
c. harmful d. harmless
7. You should clean the cut thoroughly _____ prevent any infection.
a. so that b. so as not to
c. in order to d. for
8. Wait here until I _____ you.
a. will call b. call
c. am calling d. am going to call
9. _____ lending me your pen for a moment?
a. Can you b. Would you mind
c. Could you please d. Why don't you
10. He asked me if I _____ cooking.
a. enjoy b. enjoyed
c. am enjoyed d. would enjoy

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Japan is one of the _____ countries in the world. (industry)
2. I find your magazine very _____. (inform)
3. She failed the driving test because she didn't follow the driving _____. (instruct)
4. It is _____ to eat too much sugar and fat. (health)
5. There are a lot of _____ festivals in Viet Nam. (tradition)

V. Match the questions in column A to the suitable answers in column B.

A

1. You look very well! Have you been on holiday?
2. Did you have a good time?
3. What was the weather like?
4. Did you stay in a hotel?
5. Who did you go with?
6. Who did the cooking?
7. Are you thinking of going there again?

B

- a. If I can afford it. It's a great place! Why don't you come too?
- b. Peter and his girlfriend, Julie and Jonathan.
- c. Very nice. It was hot and sunny.
- d. We took turns. But sometimes we ate out. The restaurants were really good and not very expensive.
- e. No. It would have been too expensive. But we had a very nice self-catering apartment.
- f. Yes, it was brilliant, really great.
- g. Yes, to the south of Spain. Torremolinos.

1. ____; 2. ____; 3. ____; 4. ____; 5. ____; 6. ____; 7. ____; 8. ____

VI. Complete the passage with the suitable words in the box.

family	first	festival	well	fairs	have	lucky
wishes	cooked	brightly	crowded	love		

Tet is a national and family (1) _____. It is an occasion for every Vietnamese to (2) _____ a good time while thinking about the last year and the next year. At Tet, spring (3) _____ are organized; streets and public buildings are (4) _____ decorated and almost all shops are (5) _____ with people shopping for Tet. At home, everything is tidied; special food is (6) _____; offerings of food, fresh water, flowers and betel are made on the (7) _____ altar with burning joss-sticks scenting the air. First-footing is made when the (8) _____ visitor comes, and children are (9) _____ to be given money wrapped in a red tiny envelop. Tet is also a time for peace and (10) _____. During Tet, children often behave (11) _____; and friends, relatives and neighbors give each other their best (12) _____ for the new year.

VII. Read the passage carefully, then write true (T) or false (F) for the following sentences.

Any invention has both good and bad effects on human beings.

The invention of cars makes transportation much easier, but it is cars that are the greatest contributor of air pollution. Television is considered as the most wonderful means of amusement and entertainment. It's also very useful to spread news. However, spending many hours watching TV makes bad effects on the eyes of viewers and makes viewers become less creative. People make wine to enjoy themselves but it is wine that has bad effects on

their mental and physical health. Fertilizers and pesticides help farmer get a success of good harvest, but they are the factors that make soil poisonous. Nuclear power is considered as the only alternative energy but we may be in danger of destruction by its radioactivity.

The purpose of any invention is to make our lives better, so good or bad, it depends on the way by which we use these inventions.

1. Inventions only have good effects on human beings.
2. Cars account for air pollution.
3. Spending too much time on TV is not good for your eyes.
4. Pesticides enrich the soil.
5. Nuclear power is considered as one of the alternative energy resources.
6. People should apply inventions appropriately.

VIII. Do as directed in the brackets.

1. "Is the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco?" Hoa said to Tim. (*Change into reported speech.*)

2. Mrs. Thu is going to ask a lumber to fix the faucets. (*Use the causative form with "have" instead of "ask"*)

3. Nam gets up early every morning. He doesn't want to be late for school. (*Combine into one sentence, using "in order to"*)

4. They built the house over 50 years ago. (*Change into the passive form*)

5. "Could you take me home?" (*Rewrite the sentence, using "Would you mind...?"*)

6. Christmas songs were first performed eight hundred years ago. (*Make question with "When"*)

HẾT PHẦN BÀI TẬP

ĐÁP ÁN

UNIT 1

- I.** 1. planet 3. orphanage 5. next-door 7. sociable
2. humor 4. joke 6. generous 8. reserved
- II.** 1. a round wooden table 5. nice big blue eyes
2. a beautiful new green dress 6. black leather gloves
3. a lovely sunny day 7. a small round pink face
4. a lovely small old house 8. a small black metal box
- III.** 1. My sister is old enough to drive a car.
2. The radio isn't small enough to put in your pocket.
3. This coat isn't warm enough to wear in winter.
4. She is beautiful and intelligent enough to become Miss World.
5. The weather was fine enough to go camping.
6. Those apples aren't ripe enough to eat.
7. Mr. Robinson isn't rich enough to buy a house.
8. The worker is clever enough to make fine things from wood.
- IV.** 1. hard enough to pass 6. enough time to get
2. well enough to play 7. strong enough to move
3. warm enough to go swimming 8. enough French to read
4. rich enough to buy 9. far enough to get
5. enough money to go away 10. enough chairs
- V.** 1. What naughty boys! 4. What lovely dresses!
2. What awful weather! 5. What an interesting story!
3. What a beautiful girl! 6. What sour milk!
- VI.** 1. doesn't drink - drinks 4. circles 7. don't eat
2. is 5. see 8. make
3. do ... do 6. flow 9. doesn't grow 10. does ... come - is
- VII.** 1. What's his name? 5. Where does he live?
2. How old is he? 6. Who does he live with?
3. What does he look like? 7. What does he do in his free time?/
What are his hobbies?
4. What is he like? 8. Who are his (best) friends?
- VIII.** 1. at 3. on 5. at 7. of
2. from 4. with 6. at 8. at - in
- IX.** 1. with 3. some 5. younger 7. ones 9. listening
2. days 4. large 6. lot 8. time 10. free
- X.** 1. Where did you go on weekends? 4. What does she look like?
2. Who did you go with? 5. How old is she?
3. Do I know her? 6. Would you like to meet her?

TEST FOR UNIT 1

- I.** 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. c
II. 1. c 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. a 6. b 7. c 8. b 9. d 10. c
III. 1. was 4. went 7. saw 10. doesn't like
2. is 5. to visit 8. thinks 11. to live/ living
3. has 6. travelled 9. is

- IV. 1. friendly 3. humorous 5. beautiful 7. peace 9. sociable
 2. orphanage 4. extremely 6. lucky 8. lovely 10. different
- V. 1. B (play) 2. B (playing) 3. D (to use) 4. A (was) 5. D (characters)
- VI. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T

VII. 1. Jane isn't old enough to stay alone at home.

2. What are you going to do next weekend?

3. She has long straight black hair.

4. The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.

5. There was a large round wooden table in the kitchen.

6. What an awful house!

7. We didn't have enough money to buy that car.

8. He spends most of his free time playing sports.

VIII. His name is Nguyen Manh Trung and he's fifteen years old. He lives at 24 Nguyen Du Street, Ho Chi Minh City with his mother, father and two younger sisters. He's tall and fat and he has short curly hair. He is sociable, generous and very kind. He likes/ enjoys swimming and reading. His best friends are Nam, Thanh and Phong.

UNIT 2

- I. 1. f 2. d 3. a 4. g 5. b 6. e 7. c
- II. 1. He is going to buy a new car. 6. We are going to build a garage.
 2. They are going to write a letter to thank him. 7. Mai is going to clean the windows.
 3. I am going to visit Ha Long Bay. 8. They are going to invite lots of people.
 4. He is going to stop smoking. 9. You are going to be wet.
 5. She is going to be a doctor. 10. I am going to be sick.
- III. 1. What is she going to wear? 5. When is he going to arrive?
 2. Where are you going to put it? 6. What is she going to cook?
 3. How are they going to travel? 7. Are you going to paint it tomorrow?
 4. Who are you going to invite? 8. Is he going to visit them on Sunday?
- IV. 1. She is going to faint. 5. I am going to be late for work.
 2. He is going to fall into the hole. 6. They are going to cross the street.
 3. We are going to crash. 7. There is going to be a snow storm.
 4. The boat is going to sink. 8. It is going to crash.
- V. 1. is going to rain 6. will call
 2. am going to be 7. am going to eat
 3. will probably get 8. won't pass
 4. will like 9. am going to tidy
 5. are going to visit 10. Are you going to watch
- VI. 1. there 3. downstairs 5. outside 7. upstairs 9. over
 2. inside 4. in 6. here 8. on 10. out
- VII. 1. causes 6. go - went
 2. are going to see 7. introduced
 3. speak 8. was - didn't have
 4. wrote 9. are ... going to do - am going to visit
 5. did ... learn - taught 10. to come
- VIII. 1. from 3. on - in 5. at 7. up 9. to - in
 2. at - at 4. with - at 6. over 8. for 10. with
- IX. 1. need 3. carry 5. located 7. who 9. coins
 2. no 4. travels 6. to 8. less 10. might

- X. - Are you doing anything tomorrow evening, Nga?
 - No. Why?
 - Well, I'm going to see the movie *Hijackers*. Would you like to come?
 - OK. I'll come with you. What time can we meet?
 - The film begins at 8.45, so let's meet at about 8.30 outside the theater. OK?
 - Fine. I'm seeing Mai later this evening. Shall I ask her to come too?
 - Yes, do that. I'll see you tomorrow then.

TEST FOR UNIT 2

- I. 1. a 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. b
 II. 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. b 6. d 7. c 8. b 9. c 10. d
 III. 1. is 3. was 5. helped 7. left
 2. was born 4. died 6. didn't like 8. graduating 9. is
 IV. 1. arrangements 4. inventions 7. delivery
 2. agreement 5. emigrating 8. deaf
 3. commercial 6. exhibition 9. assistant 10. successful
 V. 1. What time is the film "Harry Potter" on?
 2. What are you going to do this evening?
 3. Where does she live?
 4. When did they buy new fishing rods?
 5. Who did he work with?
 6. What did they demonstrate to the public?
 7. Who invented the telephone?
 8. Where was Marie Curie born?
 VI. 1. c 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. c
 VII. 1. Peter is not old enough to see the horror film.
 2. Don't forget to turn off the light before going out.
 3. What an intelligent girl!
 4. I am going to come over to pick you up.
 5. Nien is younger than Hoa.
 6. She has long black hair.
 7. The theater isn't far from Hoa's house.
 8. Alexandre G. Bell was an inventor of the telephone.
 9. I'll make you a phone call tomorrow evening.
 10. Let's go to the movie tonight.

UNIT 3

- I. 1. dusts 3. am going to cook 5. are washing 7. do ... feed 9. is doing
 2. emptied 4. rubbed 6. tidy 8. swept 10. cover
 II. Furniture: cupboard, armchair, coffee table, couch, bed, chair, desk, wardrobe
 Electrical equipments: refrigerator, television, stereo, fan, cassette player, dish
 washer, washing machine
 Kitchen implements: knife, saucepan, pot, oven, steamer, rice cooker
 III. 1. have to 3. have to/ must 5. has to 7. must 9. has to
 2. had to 4. have to 6. have to/ must 8. have to 10. must
 IV. 1. don't have to 4. mustn't 7. mustn't
 2. mustn't 5. mustn't 8. doesn't have to
 3. doesn't have to 6. don't have to 9. mustn't 10. don't have to

- V. 1. He ought not to go to bed late.
 2. Your parents ought to learn a few French words.
 3. People ought not to drive like that.
 4. She ought to get up earlier.
 5. He ought not to play computer games. He ought to learn the lessons.
 6. She ought not to drive so fast.
 7. They ought to widen this street.
 8. You ought to go away for a few days.
- VI. 1. herself 3. itself 5. yourself 7. myself 9. yourself
 2. himself 4. ourselves 6. themselves 8. yourself 10. themselves
- VII. 1. pay for myself 4. turn off itself 7. decorated... themselves
 2. think of themselves 5. paint... ourselves 8. bought... herself
 3. burn yourself 6. look after ourselves 9. help yourselves
 10. defend yourself
- VIII. 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. e 5. f 6. b 7. g 8. h
- IX. 1. at 3. between 5. after 7. under 9. among
 2. out of 4. in - beside 6. beneath 8. on - above 10. between
- X. 1. marvellous 4. encouraged 7. tasty 10. safely
 2. speaking 5. correctly 8. dangerous
 3. preparation 6. liking 9. importance
- XI. 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. d 6. a 7. b 8. c 9. d 10. d

TEST FOR UNIT 3

- I. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. b
- II. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. b 6. a 7. c 8. b 9. a 10. d
- III. 1. have 3. make 5. relax 7. keeps 9. is 11. get
 2. to travel 4. travels 6. look 8. driving 10. waiting 12. looking
- IV. 1. C (don't have) 2. C (carefully) 3. D (themselves) 4. B (play)
 5. B (put) 6. (chores) 7. C (between) 8. A (mustn't)
 9. D (children's reach) 10. D (by yourself)
- V. 1. safety 3. community 5. destruction 7. suitable
 2. electricity 4. dangerous 6. success 8. locked
- VI. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
- VII. 1. Why did you have to go to the police station?
 2. When must they leave?
 3. How long does Jane have to go away?
 4. How often ought I to practice English?
 5. What time do you have to go home?
 6. Why mustn't children see that film?
 7. Where will he have to go?
 8. What should I do to help them/ homeless people?

UNIT 4

- I. be → was/ were go → went escape → escaped
 use → used appear → appeared graze → grazed
 light → lit hold → held lose → lost
 make → made find → found choose → chose
 fit → fitted fall → fell come → came
 break → broke

- II. 1. appeared 3. lit 5. lost 7. came - found 9. went
2. grazed 4. held 6. chose 8. fell - broke 10. made
- III. 1. used to smoke 4. used to have 7. used to play
2. used to be 5. didn't use to like 8. didn't use to study
3. didn't use to drink 6. used to live
- IV. 1. Where did you use to live? 5. did you use to help
2. we used to live 6. I used to look
3. used to be 7. we used to gather
4. we didn't use to have 8. used to have
- V. 1. took 4. didn't have 7. didn't sleep 10. turned
2. didn't enjoy 5. laughed 8. were
3. wasn't 6. ate 9. flew
- VI. 1. didn't go 4. are they talking 7. to live - live/ are living 10. came
2. doesn't rain 5. goes 8. will help
3. learn 6. wrote 9. is having/ is going to have
- VII. 1. in - in 3. on 5. on - in 7. at - before 9. at
2. On - at/ on 4. between 6. at 8. at - after 10. on
- VIII. 1. Did you go alone? 5. What did you do in the mornings?
2. How did you travel? 6. Was the weather fine?
3. How long did you stay there? 7. Was the food good?
4. Did you stay at a hotel? 8. Did you buy any souvenirs in Nha Trang?
9. Were you tired after the trip?
- IX. 1. before 2. why 3. one 4. and 5. to
6. saw 7. hands 8. off 9. two 10. didn't

TEST FOR UNIT 4

- I. 1. c 2. a 3. d 4. a 5. b
- II. 1. c 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. b 6. a 7. c 8. c 9. c 10. a
- III. 1. went 4. saw 7. threw 10. cried
2. knocked 5. dropped 8. crawled 11. soared
3. was flying 6. climbed 9. bit 12. flew
- IV. 1. electricity 3. traditional 5. Unfortunately 7. magically 9. broken
2. equipment 4. electrical 6. foolish 8. excited 10. decision
- V. 1. A (Why did you) 2. A (did) 3. D (not to) 4. D (had) 5. C (before)
- VI. 1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. e
- VII. 1. d 2. c 3. c 4. d 5. b
- VIII. 1. We don't go to school on Saturdays.
2. They usually hold a party on New Year's Eve.
3. I am going to see Joanna at lunchtime.
4. Last night she came home between 10.30 and 11 o'clock.
5. Jazz became popular in the United States in the 1920s.
6. I called/ will call you on Friday afternoon at about 2.30.
7. The first man walked on the moon on 21 July 1969.
8. I used to stay on a farm with my grandparents and my parents.

TEST YOURSELF

- I. A. 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. d
B. 6. c 7. b 8. c 9. b 10. d
- II. A. 1. c 2. c 3. b 4. c 5. d 6. b 7. d 8. c 9. a 10. b
B. 11. friendship 12. careful - carefully 13. danger 14. wise 15. excited

- III. A. 1. d 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. b 6. c 7. d 8. c 9. b 10. b
 B. 11. A (strong enough) 12. A (to buy) 13. C (study)
 14. B (is going) 15. A (saw)
- IV. A. 1. d 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. a 7. d 8. b
 B. 1. a 2. b 3. d 4. c 5. d
- V. A. 1. I used to live on a farm.
 2. Mark isn't old enough to ride his bike to school.
 3. Nga is interested in listening to traditional stories.
 4. Bao suggested meeting at the cafe corner.
 5. Sao Mai movie theater is not far from Hoa's house.
 B. 6. I used to look after my younger brother when my parents went to work.
 7. We are going to see the movie Dream City at 7.00 this evening.
 8. Tam lives at 26 Tran Phu Street in Ha Noi with his grandparents.
 9. Last week Tina broke her arm and had to go to the hospital.
 10. Children ought to spend their free time playing sports.

UNIT 5

- I. 1. f 2. g 3. b 4. e 5. a 6. c 7. d
- II. 2. perfectly 4. carefully 6. fluent 8. terrible 10. happy
 3. fast 5. nervous 7. badly 9. angrily
- III. 1. clearly 3. seriously 5. carefully 7. hard 9. well
 2. heavily 4. patiently 6. quickly 8. fluently 10. luckily
- IV. 1. He should practice speaking more often.
 2. You shouldn't go to bed so late.
 3. She should put some pictures on the walls.
 4. You should take a photograph.
 5. She shouldn't go to school.
 6. You should write them a letter of thanks.
 7. She shouldn't eat too much fatty food.
 8. You should study harder next semester.
 9. She should go away for a few days.
 10. You shouldn't smoke./ You should stop smoking.
- V. 1. should 2. shouldn't 3. have to 4. should 5. have to
 6. don't have to 7. should 8. shouldn't 9. have to 10. don't have to
- VI. 1. Their mother asked/ told them not to make so much noise.
 2. The traffic policeman asked/ told me to show him my driving licence.
 3. Mrs. Jackson asked/ told Tim to give her a hand.
 4. The lifeguard asked/ told the boys not to swim out too far.
 5. Nam asked/ told the taxi driver to turn left at the first traffic light.
 6. She asked/ told her son to go straight upstairs and get into bed.
 7. The policeman asked/ told people not to touch anything in the room.
 8. Mary asked/ told John to carry her suitcase.
 9. Mr Atkins asked/ told David not to leave the door unlocked.
 10. I asked/ told my neighbors to turn the music down.
- VII. 1. The doctor said he should stay in bed for a few days.
 2. The doctor said he should take those medicines every four hours.
 3. The doctor said he ought to keep his body warm.
 4. The doctor said he shouldn't drink alcohol or smoke.
 5. The doctor said he ought not to eat fatty food.

6. The doctor said he should take a little hot milk before sleeping.
7. The doctor said he shouldn't stay up late at night.
8. The doctor said he should stop smoking right now.

- VIII.** 1. The teacher said to Susan, "Go to the blackboard, please."
 2. He said, "Don't leave the door open."
 3. My mother said to me, "Please help me with this heavy box."
 4. Mrs. Jackson said to Tim, "You should improve your Spanish pronunciation."
 5. They said, "Don't worry about us, Mom"
 6. Nam's mother said, "You shouldn't drive too fast, Nam."
 7. The policeman said to me, "Move your car, please".
 8. The doctor said, "You should stay in bed for a few days".

- IX.** 1. to spend 4. to learn - came 7. gets - got - to study
 2. will try 5. underline - to learn 8. being
 3. to improve 6. move 9. not to wait 10. practice
- X.** 1. for 2. out 3. of 4. at 5. on 6. in 7. by 8. for 9. on 10. in
- XI.** 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

TEST FOR UNIT 5

- I.** 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. c
- II.** 1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. d 6. c 7. b 8. b 9. d 10. b
- III.** 1. increase 3. words 5. not 7. need
 2. special 4. which 6. take 8. own
- IV.** 1. pronunciation 3. well 5. enjoyable 7. revision 9. suitable
 2. improvement 4. participated 6. proud 8. importance 10. easily
- V.** 1. A (used to) 2. B (doing) 3. B (hard) 4. B (us to write)
 5. D (loud) 6. C (to remember) 7. B (try) 8. A (I arrive)
 9. B (homework) 10. C (not to spend)
- VI.** 1. a 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. a
- VII.** 1. Miss Jackson asked Tim to try his best to improve his pronunciation.
 2. I learn English so as to be able to communicate with foreigners.
 3. My father told me not to make so much noise.
 4. They teach Maths well.
 5. He is an active participant in outdoor activities.
 6. My teacher said I should practice speaking English every day.
 7. We are going to join in an English club.
 8. It's such a difficult word that we can't spell it.
 9. You need to revise new words regularly.
 10. The film ends dramatically.

UNIT 6

- I.** 1. blind 3. application form 5. businessman 7. hospital
 2. handicapped 4. tourist 6. coeducational 8. natural resources
- II.** 1. cares 3. raise 5. participating 7. recycle
 2. sign 4. encourage 6. drawing 8. to enrol
- III.** 1. to smoke 3. working 5. getting 7. to come 9. doing
 2. asking 4. to have 6. moving 8. to become 10. to reach
- IV.** 1. arguing - to work 4. to lock - going 7. walking - riding
 2. thinking - making 5. solving - suggest 8. to persuade - change
 3. to come - standing 6. washing - to iron 9. being 10. walking - get

- V. 1. Does the film begin 4. start - finish 7. is
 2. opens - ends 5. does it finish 8. do they collect
 3. leaves - arrives 6. does your train leave - gets 9. do you finish
 10. leaves - to be
- VI. 1. Are you doing 3. He is staying 5. are you doing 7. finishes
 2. I'm/ I am going 4. gets 6. I'm/ I am going 8. we're/ we are going
- VII. 1. of 2. from 3. about 4. in/ out 5. in 6. with 7. in 8. for 9. for 10. at - on
- VIII. A. 1. Can you help 3. I need / want
 2. What can I do 4. Can you buy them 5. Certainly
 B. 1. you need any help 3. you
 2. Could you ... me 4. That's very kind
 C. 1. Could you do me 3. you help me carry
 2. can I help you? 4. Certainly 5. Thank
 D. 1. me help you 2. No. Thank you
 E. 1. I help you? 3. Could you show me
 2. I want 4. course 5. That's very kind
- IX. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F

X. Dear Tim,

I'm glad to tell you that I'm going to join the Y&Y Green Group. We are having an environment month. We are going to clean the streets on weekends. We are going to plant trees and flowers in the school garden and water them every afternoon after class. We are also planting young trees, and plants to sell to other schools. I hope we can give more green color to the city and earn some money for our school Y&Y. It's really interesting and useful, isn't it?

Write to me soon and tell me all your news.

Love,

TEST FOR UNIT 6

- I. 1. a 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. a
- II. 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. b 5. d 6. a 7. d 8. c 9. b 10. c
- III. 1. Organization 4. applicants 7. explanation
 2. Youth 5. encouragement 8. voluntary
 3. activity 6. education 9. natural 10. signatures
- IV. 1. Which program do they join in?
 2. When do they plant and water trees along the streets?
 3. Where do they collect and empty garbage?
 4. Who do they help?
 5. How do they help the community?
 6. What time do they start and finish their work?
 7. What do they collect for recycling?
 8. What do they hope?
- V. 1. d 2. b 3. a 4. c 5. d
- VI. 1. Please take this form to your teacher and ask her to sign it.
 2. Can you show me the way to the nearest post office?
 3. We are going to plant flowers in the parks and water them every afternoon after class.
 4. We hope to give more green color to the city and earn some money for our organization.
 5. Yesterday he promised to take part in recycling program.
 6. My brother is very good at repairing household appliances.

UNIT 7

- I.** 1. stadium 3. swimming pool 5. hairdresser's 7. post office
2. drugstore 4. wet market 6. grocery store 8. shopping mall
- II.** 1. wet market 3. hairdresser's 5. drugstore 7. stadium
2. grocery store 4. shopping mall 6. post office 8. swimming pool
- III.** 1. since 3. for 5. for 7. for 9. since
2. for 4. since 6. since 8. for 10. for
- IV.** 1. He has had a cold for a week.
2. They have lived in this house since April.
3. My family has been here since Christmas.
4. We haven't seen each other for 10 years.
5. Mr. Clark has worked in the bank for a long time.
6. Tom and Joanna have gone to France since last summer.
7. My sister has had a red bike since yesterday.
8. I haven't eaten in that restaurant for ages.
9. Mr. Robinson has taught in this school since 1987.
10. I have written this letter since six o'clock.
- V.** 1. haven't seen 3. haven't played 5. have read 7. haven't tried
2. haven't eaten 4. have had 6. haven't been 8. have known
- VI.** 1. have done 6. bought - hasn't worn
2. has written - hasn't finished 7. has taught - graduated
3. left - have never met 8. Have ... heard - was - died - wrote - Have ... read
4. did ... do - Did ... play 9. got - was - went
5. have ... had 10. earned - has already spent
- VII.** 1. Tim is the same age as Hoa.
2. She speaks English as well as her sister.
3. Their tastes are different from mine/ my taste.
4. They haven't lived here as long as us.
5. He is wearing a red cap like hers.
6. My birthday is the same as Tom's.
7. Sandra didn't spend as much money as Susan.
8. She is different from what I thought.
9. Nam doesn't drive as carefully as his sister.
10. We left the meeting the same time as them.
- VIII.** 1. of 2. at 3. from 4. to 5. on 6. at 7. for
- IX.** 1. How are you? 5. How long have you learned English?
2. How often do you go shopping? 6. Where did you go?
3. What are you looking for? 7. How did you come there?
4. How much is it?/
How much does it cost? 8. How far is it?
- X.** 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. b 6. a 7. c 8. c 9. d 10. b

TEST FOR UNIT 7

- I.** 1. b 2. d 3. a 4. a 5. d
- II.** 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. a 6. d 7. b 8. c 9. b 10. c
- III.** 1. learned 3. has stood 5. stayed 7. have known
2. has been 4. was 6. have lived 8. were
- IV.** 1. photographers 3. uncomfortable 5. cheaper 7. celebrating 9. unfortunately
2. performance 4. neighbors 6. convenient 8. tasty 10. difference

- V. 1. B (to send) 4. C (I) 7. C (for) 10. A (lived)
 2. C (different from) 5. A (run as quickly) 8. B (hot)
 3. B (more comfortable) 6. B (is) 9. C (cheaper)
- VI. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
- VII. 1. We haven't seen her since Christmas Day.
 2. This is the first time I have eaten this kind of food.
 3. It has rained for an hour.
 4. The last time we visited my grandparents was two months ago.
 5. I began studying English three years ago.
 6. It's nearly five years since my brother saw his best friend.
 7. How long have you learned English?
 8. Jane is the same height as her older sister.
 9. Those houses are larger than these houses.
 10. My backpack is different from yours.

UNIT 8

- I. 1. d 2. j 3. f 4. h 5. a 6. g 7. i 8. c 9. b 10. e
- II. 1. drought 3. migrant 5. urban 7. traffic jam
 2. floods 4. Typhoon 6. remote 8. tragedy
- III. 1. I am going to Nha Trang.
 2. I am having an appointment with my dentist.
 3. I am having lunch with Sue.
 4. What are you having for dinner?
 5. The weather is getting warmer.
 6. I am visiting my grandparents on their farm.
 7. What are you doing tonight? - I am practicing piano lessons.
 8. I am meeting Susan at the airport.
- IV. 1. am going - begins 6. are becoming
 2. is changing - never stay 7. Are - am having
 3. are having 8. is coming - is traveling - arrives - am meeting
 4. often rains - isn't raining 9. does ... do - isn't working
 5. does ... get 10. am getting
- V. 1. will have 6. does it end
 2. Are you going 7. am going - is getting
 3. is flying - is going to land 8. will tell - won't be
 4. will like 9. are you going - am going to have
 5. Are you doing 10. is coming - is traveling - arrives
- VI. 1. The CD is more expensive than the cassette.
 2. The church is older than the library.
 3. Clare is more popular than Andrew.
 4. The film is longer than the videotape.
 5. Going by train is slower than going by car.
 6. Laura's room is more interesting than Mark's.
 7. Matthew is stronger than Daneil.
 8. The streets in the city are more crowded than the streets in the country.
 9. The buses are more frequent than the trains
 10. It's colder today than yesterday.
- VII. 1. This stadium is the most modern (one) in Europe.
 2. Melanie is the kindest girl I know.

3. What was the happiest day of your life?
4. This Beatles album is the best (one) they ever made.
5. Arsenal is the most popular team in England.
6. This painting is the most valuable in the gallery.
7. Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.
8. This watch is one of the cheapest you can buy.
9. That is the most boring film I have ever seen.
10. It is the worst mistake I have ever made.

- VIII.** 1. more interesting than 4. bigger than 7. more peaceful than
 2. more intelligent 5. the most comfortable 8. the cleverest
 3. the shortest 6. worse 9. the most delicious
 10. the most boring

- IX.** 1. Richard isn't as old as he looks. 5. The skirt is more expensive than the dress.
 2. This hotel is the most comfortable. 6. The kitchen is bigger than the living-room.
 3. The table is as big as the desk. 7. It's the most interesting story I've ever read.
 4. My brother is fitter than I am. 8. John is the cleverest in my class.

- X.** 1. in 2. to 3. with 4. for 5. on 6. of 7. on 8. for 9. to 10. on - in

- XI.** 1. advantages 2. environment 3. hurry 4. neighbors 5. isolated
 6. which 7. services 8. polluted 9. means 10. friends

TEST FOR UNIT 8

- I.** 1. c 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. a
II. 1. c 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. a 6. d 7. a 8. b 9. a 10. d

- III.** 1. people 2. it 3. lived 4. is 5. feed 6. lot 7. work 8. so

- IV.** 1. entertainment 2. relatives 3. friendly 4. destruction
 5. plentiful 6. unpleasant 7. polluted 8. permanently
 9. boring - bored 10. accessible

- V.** 1. c 2. f 3. g 4. b 5. a 6. h 7. e 8. d

- VI.** 1. b 2. d 3. d 4. c 5. b

- VII.** Dear Susan,

(1) Thank you very much for your letter which arrived few days ago. (2) It was lovely to hear from you. (3) I am sorry I haven't written for such a long time, but I have been very busy. (4) As you know, we bought a new house in September. (5) It was in very bad condition and it needed repairing a lot. (6) We have just finished most of it, and now it looks very nice. (7) Peter and I have decided to give a house-warming party on May 3rd. (8) Do you think you'll be able to come? (9) Please give me a ring and let me know if you can come. (10) I really look forward to seeing you again.

Love,
 Jenny

TEST YOURSELF

- I.** A. 1. a 2. b 3. d 4. c 5. b
 B. 1. a 2. c 3. b 4. b 5. a
II. A. 1. a 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. d 6. a 7. b 8. c 9. a 10. d
 B. 11. pride 12. entertainment 13. explanation
 14. neighborhood 15. popular
III. A. 1. c 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. c 6. b 7. c 8. c 9. d 10. d
 B. 11. A (have lived) 12. C (because) 13. C (finish)
 14. B (harder) 15. A (is)
IV. A. 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. c 6. b 7. d 8. a

- B. 9. b 10. d 11. b 12. b 13. a
- V. A. 1. Jane told/ asked Tim to turn off all the lights when he went out.
 2. The doctor told Mr Roberts that he should take more exercise./ The doctor advised Mr Roberts to take more exercise.
 3. Jane is the youngest in the group.
 4. We haven't seen Joanna for two years.
 5. My sister is a good dancer.
- B. 6. Hoang used to write to his friends, but now he telephones them.
 7. He has worked in the bank since he left college.
 8. We were extremely tired after the trip, so we slept on the bus on the way home.
 9. Language learners should try different ways of learning words so as to find out the best way for themselves.
 10. I prefer living in the country to living in the city.

THE FIRST-SEMESTER EXAMINATION

- I. 1. d 2. b 3. b
- II. 1. c 2. b
- III. 1. a 2. c 3. c 4. c 5. d 6. c 7. a 8. d 9. b 10. a
- IV. 1. more 2. for 3. there 4. so 5. time 6. built 7. water 8. house
- V. 1. natural 2. careless 3. organization 4. revision 5. widely
- VI. 1. f 2. g 3. e 4. b 5. h 6. a 7. i 8. d 9. c
- VII. 1. advantages 2. education 3. available 4. range
 5. interesting 6. least 7. fields 8. higher
- VIII. 1. I haven't seen him since 1985. 4. My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
 2. How long have you learned English? 5. The gardener told us not to walk on the grass.
 3. Are you as old as Jane?

UNIT 9

- I. 1. c 2. f 3. d 4. b 5. a 6. h 7. g 8. e
- II. 1. revived 3. arrived 5. elevate 7. minimize 9. to cover
 2. ease 4. forced 6. bleeding 8. injected 10. sterilize
- III. 1. He always drives carefully in order not to/ so as not to cause accidents
 2. Please arrive early so that we can start the meeting on time.
 3. I went to the college in order to/ so as to see Professor Taylor.
 4. She wore warm clothes in order not to/ so as not to get cold.
 5. I closed the window so that nobody could look at my room.
 6. We turned out the lights in order not to/ so as not to waste electricity.
 7. He moved to the front row in order to/ so as to hear the speaker better.
 8. I left Dave my phone number so that he could contact me.
 9. Thanh and Nga are going to Australia in order to/ so as to learn English.
 10. We hurried to school in order not to/ so as not to be late.
- IV. 1. c 2. g 3. d 4. f 5. h 6. b 7. e 8. a
- V. 1. won't happen 3. will come 5. will look 7. won't know 9. will like
 2. won't be 4. won't pass 6. will wait 8. will get 10. won't meet
- VI. 1. will go - stops 4. will phone - arrive 7. will move 10. will bring - return
 2. won't come - are 5. see - will give 8. will look after - is
 3. will come - leave 6. will leave - rises 9. will be - don't hurry
- VII. 1. will phone 4. will lend 7. does your train leave
 2. am playing 5. am having 8. Are you doing
 3. will meet 6. won't forget 9. Will you go 10. won't tell

- VIII. 2. Would you like some cold drink? - That's nice. 6. I will try my best to improve them.
 3. I promise we will be back on time. 7. Can you tidy it up?
 4. Could you give me a bandage, please? 8. What can I do for you? - I will lend
 5. Shall I carry your bags? you my bike.
- IX. 1. off - on 2. for 3. on 4. in 5. with
 6. with 7. for - up 8. over - on 9. between 10. on
- X. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. T

TEST FOR UNIT 9

- I. 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. c
- II. 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. c 6. b 7. d 8. c 9. c 10. c
- III. 1. unconscious 3. pressure 5. chilled 7. injection 9. instructions
 2. revival 4. blood 6. immediate 8. anxious 10. sterilized
- IV. 1. Would you like a cup of tea? 5. Can I get you a drink?
 2. Could you move this wardrobe, please? 6. Would you please pay me in cash?
 3. Don't forget. I'll wait. 7. Of course. I'll give it to you this afternoon.
 4. Shall I open the windows?
- V. 1. C (not to) 2. A (hasn't written) 3. C (see)
 4. D (are you coming) 5. C (opening) 6. A (will)
 7. D (will leave) 8. A (is learning) 9. B (gave) 10. D (tight)
- VI. 1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. c
- VII. 1. Could you show me the way to the nearest post office?
 2. Will you please open the door?
 3. Hanh is studying very hard in order not to fail in the exam.
 4. Shall I drive?
 5. Can you help me carry my bags?
 6. He climbed the tree so as to get a better view.
 7. I am going to help him revise his lessons.
 8. We'll drive you to the airport.
 9. This train stops at Bath.
 10. Lan asked the nurse to send an ambulance to Quang Trung School.

UNIT 10

- I. 1. reused 2. recycled 3. wrap 4. protect - save
 5. overpackaged 6. throw 7. fertilizing 8. collects
- II. 1. break 2. wash 3. dry 4. Mix 5. melt 6. use 7. dip 8. blow
- III. 1. is made 2. are caused 3. are employed
 4. are showed 5. is covered 6. is surrounded
 7. are usually held 8. is ... pronounced 9. are made 10. am taken
- IV. 1. will be cleaned 2. musn't be opened 3. can be made
 4. will be held 5. can be recycled 6. should be sent
 7. must be signed 8. is going to be built 9. should be used 10. can be answer
- V. 1. Bottles of milk are brought to house by the milkman.
 2. How are languages learnt?
 3. I will be collected at the airport by John.
 4. The cheque must be signed by the manager.
 5. I was kept waiting for half an hour.
 6. A new ring road round the city is being built.
 7. Jeans can't be worn at work.
 8. Will she be invited to your party?

9. A new hospital has been built near the airport.
10. Are French and English spoken in Canada?
- VI. 1. We were delighted to get your letter yesterday.
2. It isn't easy to answer these questions.
3. Your writing is difficult to read.
4. I was surprised to see Paul at the party last night.
5. It's impossible to understand his theory.
6. They are ready to start now.
7. It's cruel to tease animal.
8. Are you pleased to see me again?
- VII. 1. They are lucky to pass all the exams.
2. John was very surprised to get Ann's letter yesterday.
3. I'm afraid that she can't come.
4. We were sorry to hear about your father's illness.
5. I'm ashamed to have nothing better to offer you.
6. Susan was happy to receive a lot of birthday presents.
7. I was worried that you wouldn't come back.
8. We are delighted that you are interested in protecting the environment.
9. I'm sorry that Jane has decided to leave the company.
10. It was brave of him to jump into the river to save the child.
- VIII. 1. like - for 2. away - for 3. for - on 4. from 5. into
6. in 7. of 8. up - into 9. from 10. with - at
- IX. 1. Don't throw away 5. how about the glass bottles
2. sent to the factories 6. are broken into small pieces
3. with these used things 7. what happen next
4. crush it up and made it into pulp again 8. throw things away

TEST FOR UNIT 10

- I. 1. d 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. d
- II. 1. b 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. d 6. b 7. b 8. c 9. c 10. b
- III. 1. are carried out 4. to invent 7. organizing
2. working 5. attempts 8. be developed
3. are 6. have invented 9. to consider 10. be wanted
- IV. 1. overpackaged 3. natural 5. dangerous 8. mixture
2. representatives 4. reused 6. fertilizer 9. packaging
7. recycling 10. environmentally
- V. 1. D (happy) 2. B (to be met) 3. D (the) 4. A (was painted)
5. B (grown) 6. B (by) 7. C (walking) 8. C (to come)
9. B (arrive) 10. D (the questions)
- VI. 1. c 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. d
- VII. 1. The bill must be paid at once.
2. English is spoken by many people in the world.
3. It's impossible to work in those condition
4. Your bicycle will be repaired (by me) tomorrow afternoon.
5. Miss Linda asked the students not to throw things away.
6. Many dangerous diseases can be cured by penicillin.
7. Is rice exported to Britain by your country?
8. I was very delighted to pass the final exams.
9. This question is difficult for us to understand.
10. She's looking forward to seeing her grandparents.

UNIT 11

- I.** 1. waterfall 3. buffalo 5. tribe 7. suggested 9. magnificent
2. accommodation 4. luggage 6. heritage 8. resort 10. slopes
- II.** 1. having 2. weather 3. near 4. the 5. see 6. on 7. will 8. Best
- III.** 1. Would/ Do you mind taking me a photograph?
2. Would/ Do you mind waiting a moment?
3. Would/ Do you mind turning down the TV?
4. Would/ Do you mind making some tea?
5. Would/ Do you mind lending me some money?
6. Would/ Do you mind posting the letters for me?
7. Would/ Do you mind not playing your music so loud?
8. Would/ do you mind not using the office phone?
- IV.** 1. Would you mind if I moved the refrigerator to the right corner?
2. Do you mind if I smoke?
3. Would you mind if I asked you a question?
4. Would you mind if I turned the air conditioner off?
5. Do you mind if I use your handphone?
6. Would you mind if I carried your luggage?
7. Do you mind if I borrow your newspaper?
8. Would you mind if I drove?
- V.** 1. showing 2. traveling 3. to come 4. cleaning 5. used
6. waiting 7. to go/ going 8. take 9. sat 10. living/ to live
- VI.** 1. The baby sitting in an armchair is crying for her mother.
2. The boy injured in the accident was taken to the hospital.
3. The road joining the two villages is very narrow.
4. Do you know the woman talking to Tom?
5. The window broken last night has been repaired.
6. The taxi taking us to the airport broke down.
7. A bridge built only two years ago has been declared unsafe.
8. Most of the goods made in this factory are exported.
9. A new factory employing 500 people has just opened in the town.
10. "Romeo and Juliet" written by Shakespeare is the best tragedy I have ever seen.
- VII.** 1. blown 2. dancing 3. invited 4. living 5. stolen
6. called 7. offering 8. arrested 9. injured 10. planting
- VIII.** 1. sitting 2. being laughed 3. to meet 4. will arrive 5. traveling
6. leaving 7. has met 8. written 9. was written 10. turned
- IX.** 1. to 2. with 3. in 4. by 5. in 6. of 7. off 8. into
- X.** Tourist: What can I see in Central Viet Nam?
Guide: You can enjoy many coastal towns with beautiful beaches. Besides, you can go to Hue and visit the mausoleums of the Nguyen Kings.
Tourist: I have heard of Hoi An. Is it an interesting place?
Guide: Yes. It's an old town with many Japanese and Chinese cultural features.
Tourist: What other places should I go to?
Guide: Why don't you go to Ha Noi. You can find many historical sites there.
- XI.** 1. c 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. c 6. a 7. d 8. b

TEST FOR UNIT 11

- I.** 1. b 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. a
II. 1. b 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. c 6. b 7. d 8. c 9. a 10. b

- III. 1. having 4. welcome 7. photo 10. send
 2. city 5. playing 8. doesn't
 3. people 6. all 9. hardly
- IV. 1. (b) 2. (h) 3. (e) 4. (g) 5. (f) 6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (d)
- V. 1. flights 2. accommodation 3. departure 4. arrival
 5. Unfortunately 6. daily 7. mountainous 8. recognition
- VI. 1. C (since) 2. C (opening) 3. A (being) 4. D (hasn't it) 5. B (ask)
- VII. 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. c
- VIII. 1. Would you mind if I turned off the television?
 2. Do you mind turning the music down?
 3. Do you mind if I use your phone?
 4. Could you fill in this form, please?
 5. Would you like to come for dinner tonight?
 6. It is very interesting to travel around Viet Nam.
 7. I hope you don't mind me/ my using your dictionary.
 8. The girls playing chess are Nga and Hoa.
 9. The paintings stolen from the museum haven't been found yet.
 10. How about going to Ben Thanh Market?

UNIT 12

- I. 1. Montreal 3. Ottawa 5. Australia 7. Southeast Asia
 2. London 4. Eiffel Tower 6. The United Kingdom 8. Mount Rushmore
- II. 1. most 2. It 3. stay 4. guest 5. are 6. where 7. chairs 8. for
- III. 1. They were playing tennis at 10.30 yesterday morning.
 2. Ann was doing her homework at 5 o'clock this afternoon.
 3. My father was washing his car from five to six.
 4. This time last year we were living in France.
 5. The students were offering the flowers to the visitors.
 6. I was cooking dinner half an hour ago.
 7. She was working in the studio at that time.
 8. What were you doing from 3 to 6 yesterday afternoon?
- IV. 1. rang - was watching 6. began - was sitting
 2. were you driving - happened 7. took - wasn't looking
 3. were making - arrived 8. saw - were trying
 4. went - were having - came 9. was walking - felt - didn't know
 5. were you doing - was working 10. dropped - was doing - didn't break
- V. 1. were driving 5. stopped 9. seemed 13. flew
 2. saw 6. got 10. had 14. disappeared
 3. were coming 7. was 11. was flashing
 4. appeared 8. were twinkling 12. were watching
- VI. 1. You're always watching television. 4. It's always breaking down.
 2. I'm always making the same mistake./... that mistake 5. She's always leaving the lights on.
 3. You're always losing your key. 6. They're always missing the school bus.
 7. You're always losing your pen
 8. You're always forget your glasses
- VII. 1. over 3. like 5. at - on - of 7. to - about 9. on
 2. in - for 4. up - at 6. on 8. in 10. at - on

- VIII. 1. Who did you go with 5. What did you do there
 2. How long were you there 6. Was it funny
 3. Did you go to 7. Where did you stay
 4. What was the weather like 8. did you like Japanese food
- IX. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T

TEST FOR UNIT 12

- I. A. 1. d 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. d
 B. Australian vacation wonderful accommodation
 départure gallery university exciting
 président souvenir hópitable
- II. 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. c 6. c 7. b 8. d 9. c 10. b
- III. 1. vacation 3. stayed 5. around 7. so 9. local
 2. in 4. rented 6. learn 8. fresh 10. studied
- IV. 1. B (to come) 2. C (warm) 3. B (was driving) 4. D (screamed)
 5. C (took) 6. D ('m always losing) 7. B (going)
 8. B (swimming) 9. C (eight-hour) 10. A (Traveling)
- V. 1. friendly 2. accommodation 3. tribal 4. various
 5. volcanoes 6. Unfortunately 7. exciting 8. famous
- VI. 1 We had a great vacation in California!
 2 We started our trip in San Francisco.
 3 We saw Chinatown and Fisherman's Wharf, and took a cruise around San Francisco Bay.
 4 After San Francisco, we went to Los Angeles. We love Hollywood and Universal Studios.
 5 Then we rented a car and drove to Palm Springs. It's about three hours from Los Angeles. We played golf there and took a tour.
 6 From Palm Springs, we went to San Diego. It's a beautiful city, and the zoo is really interesting.
 7 Well, that's about all for now. I'll tell you about the rest of my trip when I get back.
- VII. 1. Australia is in the South Pacific.
 2. The population of Sydney is nearly four million.
 3. No. It's the first language of most people, but there are also many other languages spoken in Australia.
 4. The area of Canada is 3,223 miles.
 5. Both English and French are spoken in Canada.
 6. It's very cold in winter.
 7. The neighbors of Switzerland are France, Italy, Austria, and Germany.
- VIII. Here we are in Montreal, a city of Quebec, Canada. We have been here for five days. The weather is terribly cold, but we are having a great vacation. Montreal is a beautiful city and lots of people speak French here. We are staying in a mini-hotel by a lake. The hotel is great and the food is delicious. Yesterday, we went skiing. It was very exciting and I took lots of photographs. Everything is very nice, but quite expensive here, so I didn't buy many things. I'll go to Quebec City next weekend. It's not far from here. How are you? I hope you are well.
 See you soon.

TEST YOURSELF

- I. A. 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. c 5. b
 B. 6. b 7. c 8. a 9. a 10. d
- II. A. 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. d 6. d 7. c 8. b 9. a 10. a

- B. 11. enjoyable 12. harmful 13. environmental
14. fainting 15. mountainous
- III. A. 1. d 2. d 3. b 4. b 5. b 6. d 7. c 8. b 9. a 10. c
B. 11. B (interesting) 12. D (rang) 13. C (heaviness)
14. B (could be heard) 15. B (ask)
- IV. A. 1. a 2. c 3. d 4. c 5. b 6. a 7. d 8. c 9. b 10. a
B. 1. b 2. c 3. d 4. c 5. a
- V. 1. This letter will be translated into Vietnamese.
2. It is impossible to travel around the city in a day.
3. Would you mind if I took a photo?
4. She told/ asked us to shut the door but not to lock it.
5. Air travel is the fastest kind of transport
6. The last time we saw each other was over two years ago.
7. Do you mind helping me move this table?
8. The water was not warm enough for children to swim in.
9. Mai is always leaving her pen at home.
10. Not only is she a teacher but she is also a singer.

UNIT 13

- I. 1. e 2. f 3. h 4. g 5. a 6. c 7. d 8. b
- II. 1. bird-watching 5. Ice skating
2. bullfighting 6. water-fetching
3. Weight-lifting 7. air-conditioning
4. window-shopping 8. zebra-crossing
- III. 1. The poem "A visit from Saint Nicholas" was written by Clement Clarke Moore.
2. Christmas songs were performed for people in town.
3. Children were given presents by Santa Claus on Christmas Eve.
Presents were given to children by Santa Claus on Christmas Eve.
4. The Christmas tree was decorated with colored lights by my father.
5. I was taught to draw the Christmas cards by Miss Thanh.
6. Liz was invited to the rice-cooking festival by Ba.
7. The festival was held in the communal house yard.
8. The first prize was awarded to the Mekong team by the council leader. / The Mekong team was awarded the first prize by the council leader.
- IV. 1. are employed 6. is locked
2. covers 7. was born - grew
3. was posted - arrived 8. didn't play - was cancelled
4. sank - was rescued 9. was written - was translated
5. died - were brought 10. called - was injured - wasn't needed
- V. 1. Is cotton exported to many countries by Egypt?
2. They decorated the Christmas tree and put it at the front door.
3. Something must be done for these poor men.
4. Was the novel "Martin Idon" written by Jack London?
5. They are going to build a new supermarket next year.
6. A new church has just been built near my house.
7. French and English are spoken in Canada.
8. The telephone was invented by Bell in 1876.
9. He is said to be the best doctor.
10. New Art Gallery will exhibit his painting for the first time.

- VI.** 1. Charles said he was living in London then.
 2. Jane told us that we were her best friends.
 3. Johnny told me that he didn't know what Fred was doing.
 4. Hoa said they were decorating their Christmas tree.
 5. He told his friends that he had to go home then.
 6. Hoa said she couldn't go out after 8 p.m.
 7. She told me that she would come and see me as soon as she could.
 8. Judy said John wanted to come there but he wasn't very well.
 9. Susan said she had to wear uniform when she was at school.
 10. Judy told me he was going away for a few days and he would phone me when he got back.
 11. Ba told/ urged his teammate to run faster.
 12. Lan's mother asked her to collect her new áo dài at the tailor round the corner.
- VII.** 1. should be written 6. wasn't - couldn't
 2. was fixing - was cooking 7. met - were walking
 3. can be solved 8. are being followed
 4. to go 9. woke - didn't go
 5. was - was taught 10. built
- VIII.** 1. on 2. of 3. for 4. in 5. from
 6. in 7. to 8. on 9. in 10. from
- IX.** 1. holiday 3. preparations 5. relatives 7. top
 2. although 4. bought 6. put 8. are
- X.** 1. Have you tidied the bedrooms yet?
 2. Christmas songs are often performed in the churches.
 3. When was the poem written?
 4. The celebration will be held tomorrow.
 5. The old man wanted to visit the village where he was born.
 6. While I was having dinner, the phone rang.
 7. She said she was interested in the rice-cooking contest.
 8. The grand prize is given to the team with the most points

TEST FOR UNIT 13

- I.** 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. d
- II.** 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. d 5. a 6. b 7. c 8. c 9. c 10. b
- III.** 1. festivals/ holidays 2. at 3. wish 4. time 5. until/ till
 6. dress 7. from 8. them 9. play 10. hardly
- IV.** 1. greeting 4. performance 7. traditional
 2. famous 5. interesting 8. competitors
 3. participant 6. suitable 9. description 10. decorations
- V.** 1. B (inviting) 5. B (were performed) 9. A (said that/ told me that)
 2. A (finished products) 6. D (to make) 10. B (design)
 3. B (had to) 7. D (on Christmas Eve)
 4. B (appeared) 8. B (participate)
- VI.** 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T
- VII.** 1. The poem was written by Clement Clarke Moore in 1823.
 2. You should send Christmas cards a week before Christmas Day.
 3. The children said they were waiting for the school bus.
 4. This machine hasn't been used for years.
 5. It is impossible to grow roses in such poor ground.
 6. Recycled plastic is used to make toys and utensils.

7. She asked me to turn off all the lights when I went out.
8. I haven't played tennis since 1990.
9. Jane told me that she would give me her phone number so that I could call her.
10. Would you mind not smoking in the kitchen?

UNIT 14

- I.** 1. i 2. j 3. f 4. g 5. a 6. e 7. b 8. d 9. c 10. h
- II.** 1. is 3. was designed 5. has been
2. is visited 4. was erected 6. is recognized
- III.** 1. Angkor Wat was built in the early 12th century.
2. Golden Gate Bridge was opened in 1937.
3. Grand Canyon was excavated by the Colorado River.
4. The faces of four American presidents were carved by Gutzon Borglum from 1927 to 1941.
5. Empire State Building was completed in 1931.
6. The temple of Artemis was destroyed by the Goths in AD 262.
7. The Statue of Liberty was made by French people.
8. Quoc Tu Giam was established in 1076.
- IV.** 1. am studying 6. could eat - wasn't ordered
2. didn't finish 7. was caused - was driving
3. were woken up 8. was invited - asked
4. was looking - was told 9. didn't play - was cancelled
5. was answered 10. is being built - started - is expected
- V.** 1. She asked Minh if/ whether he could speak Spanish.
2. Thanh asked her teacher if/ whether she would finish her exercise at home.
3. Nien asked Hoa if/ whether she had many new friends.
4. My friend asked me if/ whether I was going to leave the next day.
5. They asked us if/ whether we had to go then.
6. I asked Nam if/ whether he was free that night.
7. She asked the tourists if/ whether they knew the way to the station.
8. John asked Nhi if/ whether Phong Nha Cave was in southern Vietnam.
9. The visitors asked if/ whether they could take photos.
10. Daniel asked Jim if/ whether there was a café nearby.
- VI.** 1. He told/ asked me not to forget to post the letter.
2. Nhi said she was visiting Hoi An then.
3. The customs officer asked me to open my bag.
4. Johnny said he didn't know how to do that exercise.
5. She said she had to stay at home the next day.
6. Hoa asked Tim if he liked that place. He said he didn't.
7. The man told Nam that the clock would never work again if he tried to repair it.
8. The teacher asked Nga whether Mount Everest was the highest mountain in the world. She said that it was.
9. Hoa asked Nga if she was going to visit Phong Nha Cave.
10. Jane asked Tim to send her a postcard when he arrived in Paris.
- VII.** 1. to take 4. to come 7. talking - to lift 10. to finish - painting
2. having 5. to rain 8. to turn off - going
3. watching 6. closing 9. to iron - doing
- VIII.** 2. where to go 5. who to invite 8. when to pay
3. how to use 6. whether to buy 9. how much to spend
4. what to say 7. what to do

IX. 1. b 2. c 3. c 4. a

TEST FOR UNIT 14

I. 1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. b

II. 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. d 6. a 7. d 8. b 9. c 10. a

III. 1. tomb 2. its 3. wonders 4. pyramid
5. reveal 6. scientific 7. found 8. ordinary

IV. 1. The Eiffel Tower was designed by Alexandre Eiffel for the Paris World's Fair of 1889.
2. New Arts gallery will exhibit his painting for the first time.
3. It was said that the Pyramids of Egypt is one of the wonders of the world. / The Pyramids of Egypt was said to be one of the wonders of the world.
4. The plan to Florida has to be changed because of the rough weather.
5. The police is questioning him about the stolen goods.
6. Did your teacher teach you how to apply this theory?
7. The concerts are usually held at the university.
8. Their work has already been finished as requested.

V. 1. B (to change) 2. D (than) 3. C (the largest temple)
4. B (if you could) 5. D (to help) 6. C (which)
7. D (to buy) 8. D (wonders) 9. D (in the world) 10. A (was)

VI. 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. a

VIII. 1. The table is as big as the desk.
2. Clair and her sister are going to spend summer holidays in Bali.
3. Would you mind telling me the way to the Oxford Street.
4. Martin asked Susan if she could work on Saturdays.
5. When I was young I used to travel around the country.
6. He is fond of collecting stamps.
7. The first motor car was made by Etienne Lenoir.
8. Anna invited Mike to join her for lunch.
9. It was agreed that the plan should go ahead.
10. Exercise is said to be good for you.

UNIT 15

I. 1. difficult # easy 4. interesting # boring 7. quiet # noisy
2. big # small 5. useful # useless 8. amusing # sad
3. healthy # ill 6. dangerous # safe 9. beautiful # ugly 10. old # new

II. 1. printer 4. time-consuming 7. bulletin board 10. technology
2. guarantee 5. knob - monitor 8. skeptical
3. computers 6. freshman 9. library

III. 1. keyboard 3. monitor 5. program 7. mouse
2. socket 4. screen 6. disk 8. printer

IV. 1. David has already left the party. 6. Has it stopped raining yet?
2. I haven't received his letter yet. 7. He has already drunk three bottles of beer.
3. Has the manager come to the office yet? 8. We haven't heard anything from them yet.
4. We have already seen that film. 9. Have you posted the letter yet?
5. Laura hasn't found a job yet. 10. They have already gone to Brazil.

V. 2. have just met 6. have just arrived
3. has already gone 7. haven't told him yet
4. haven't read it yet 8. have already done
5. has already seen

- VI.** 1. Have you ever connected - have known - was
 2. has broken - did that happen - fell
 3. have burnt - did you do - picked
 4. hasn't been - did he go - left
 5. gave - lost/ have lost
 6. Have you heard - haven't received - left
 7. Have you seen - have already seen - did you see - saw
- VII.** 1. invented 2. have seen 3. I've just bought
 4. Have you read 5. Have you seen 6. haven't seen
 7. left 8. haven't gone 9. wasn't
 10. were you 11. grew 12. I've written - haven't finished
 13. has left 14. have already gone 15. had
- VIII.** 1. on 2. with 3. with 4. out of
 5. in 6. off 7. from 8. for
- IX.** 1. c 2. a 3. c 4. a 5. c

TEST FOR UNIT 15

- I.** 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. d 5. d
- II.** 1. a 2. b 3. c 4. d 5. a
- III.** 1. b 2. d 3. d 4. b 5. c 6. b 7. a 8. b 9. c 10. d
- IV.** 1. invention 3. helpful 5. information 7. important
 2. extremely 4. accuracy 6. various 8. unchangable
- V.** 1. D (yet) 2. A (have already been) 3. C (restricted)
 4. B (was) 5. C (knows) 6. C (developed)
 7. A (Did you eat) 8. D (properly)
- VI.** 1. e 2. d 3. a 4. g 5. c 6. b 7. h 8. f
- VII.** 1. necessary 2. need 3. teachers 4. hard 5. schools
 6. better 7. libraries 8. talks 9. networks 10. studying
- VIII.** 1. It is the most interesting computer game I've ever played.
 2. This printer is out of order because you haven't used it for a long time.
 3. Computers can be networked using modems and telephone lines.
 4. All information about our school is now stored in the computer.
 5. Without leaving their computer, users can send messages and receive information through telephone lines
 6. All our computers are linked to a main network.
- IX.** 2. A: I think these computer games are very interesting.
 B: I can't agree with you. I think they are so much violent.
 3. A: I like sports activities. I think they're all good for health.
 B: So do I.
 4. A: I think the TV programs today are so boring.
 B: I disagree. I think they are entertaining.
 5. A: I don't like rock music. I feel it's too noisy.
 B: Neither do I.
 6. A: I think computers are useful.
 B: You're right.
 7. A: I like violent films. I think they are exciting.
 B: I disagree. I think they are so terrible.

UNIT 16

- I.** 1. f 2. d 3. e 4. a 5. g 6. h 7. b 8. c
- II.** 1. are ... ground 4. has been used 7. be touched
2. is being removed 5. are stored 8. was invented
3. is made 6. was drained 9. was awarded
10. was brought
- III.** 1. vacuum cleaner 3. microwave 5. hairdryer 7. bell
2. telephone 4. toaster 6. dishwasher 8. sewing machine
- IV.** 1. The facsimile was invented by Alexander Bain in 1843.
2. The beans are dried in the sun.
3. Payment can be made at any post office.
4. How is English learned?
5. A new supermarket is going to be built next year.
6. Where were these photographs taken?
7. The students are being showed around the factory by the foreman.
8. The instructions will be translated into French.
9. Has the meeting been postponed by the council?
10. The room was being cleaned when I arrived.
11. Our homework hasn't been finished yet.
12. The computer is said to be one of the most important inventions
- V.** 1. are being followed 6. be sent - will arrive
2. breaks 7. are ... made - Have ... ever made
3. are said 8. saw - called - was injured - wasn't needed
4. was born - grew 9. invented - was invented
5. has been sold 10. broke - is working - has been repaired
- VI.** First, put the rice in a pot with two cups of water. Boil until the water is gone. Next, wash and chop the cabbage, carrot, green onions, and bean sprouts. Then fry the chopped vegetables in the wok or big frying pan, and then add the rice and stir. Fry together a few minutes. After that add the egg and mix well. Finally pour in a little soy sauce and stir again. Enjoy your fried rice!
- VII.** 1. from 3. round 5. by 7. with
2. in - by 4. for 6. beside 8. into
- VIII.** 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. T

TEST FOR UNIT 16

- I.** 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. d
- II.** 1. b 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. a 6. b 7. c 8. d 9. b 10. c
- III.** 1. out 3. for 5. invented 7. by
2. working 4. program 6. a/ per 8. questions
- IV.** 1. C (from) 2. C (asked) 3. D (was built)
4. B (translate) 5. C (were crossing) 6. B (was invented)
7. D (to touch) 8. C (left) 9. C (was printed) 10. B (as)
- V.** 1. Who(m) was Penicillin discovered by?
2. When were the first postage stamps made?
3. What will be built across the International Park next month?
4. How long is the fruit harvest fermented?
5. What is paper made from?
6. Where was the Pasteur Institute founded in 1888?

7. How much information has Sandra just been sent about the meeting?
8. How was she taken to the hospital?

VI. 1. inventions 2. conveyor 3. mixture 4. chemically
5. production 6. manufacturers 7. inventor 8. liquid

VII. 1. c 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. c 6. b

VIII. 1. Would you mind if I took some photographs?

2. This room hasn't been used for years.
3. I haven't seen her for two months.
4. You can buy tax free goods before you get on the plane.
5. We are going to have the repairman repair my car next week.
6. The tourists said they liked that place.
7. The film was so interesting that we watched it several times.
8. An asked Hanh where he was going the following weekend.

TEST YOURSELF

- I. A. 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. c 5. a
B. 6. b 7. c 8. a 9. d 10. b
- II. A. 1. a 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. d 6. c 7. c 8. d 9. d 10. d
B. 11. c 12. b 13. c 14. d 15. b
- III. A. 1. c 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. b 6. c 7. a 8. b 9. c 10. a
B. 11. C (playing) 12. B (have taken) 13. C (knew)
14. D (yet) 15. C (is stored)

- IV. A. 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. c 5. b 6. c 7. a 8. d
B. 1. b 2. a 3. a 4. c 5. c 6. a
- V. A. 1. a 2. b 3. d 4. b 5. b

- B. 6. James Watt, who was/ is a Scottish scientist, invented the steam engine.
7. My father has been unemployed since he left his job.
8. Our beautiful forests will be destroyed if we don't do anything to preserve them.
9. He said he had to work harder for the coming exam.
10. We were extremely tired after the trip, so we slept on the bus on the way home.

THE SECOND-SEMESTER EXAMINATION

- I. 1. c 2. b 3. a
- II. 1. a 2. d
- III. 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. c 6. c 7. c 8. b 9. b 10. b
- IV. 1. industrial 2. informative 3. instruction 4. unhealthy 5. traditional
- V. 1. g 2. f 3. c 4. e 5. b 6. d 7. a
- VI. 1. festival 3. fairs 5. crowded 7. family 9. lucky 11. well
2. have 4. brightly 6. cooked 8. first 10. love 12. wishes
- VII. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T
- VIII. 1. Hoa asked Tim if the Golden Gate Bridge was in San Francisco.
2. Mrs. Thu is going to have a plumber fix the faucets.
3. Nam gets up early every morning in order not to be late for school.
4. The house was built over 50 years ago
5. Would you mind taking me home?
6. When were Christmas songs first performed?

HẾT

↳ Lưu ý: Used to luôn có nghĩa quá khứ, không có dạng hiện tại. Để nói về thói quen hoặc tình trạng ở hiện tại, ta thường dùng thì hiện tại đơn (present simple).

• Be/ Get used to + verb-ing / noun: quen với/ trở nên quen với

9. PASSIVE FORMS (Thế bị động)

- Present simple → am / is / are + past participle
- Present progressive → am / is / are + being + past participle
- Present perfect → have / has + been + past participle
- Past simple → was / were + past participle
- Past progressive → was / were + being + past participle
- Future simple → will + be + past participle
- Going to future → am / is / are + going to + be + past participle
- Modal verbs → can / must / should / used to... + be + past participle

↳ Lưu ý: By me, by him, by her, by us, by them, by people, by someone trong câu bị động thường được bỏ. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn thường đứng trước by, trạng từ chỉ thời gian thường đứng sau by.

10. CAUSATIVE FORM (Thế sai khiến)

S + have + object (person) + bare infinitive
S + have + object (thing) + past participle

Ex: She is old enough to decide herself.

ENOUGH + noun + to-infinitive / for (pro)noun

I haven't got enough money to buy a car.

Ex: These boxes are too heavy to carry.

TOO + adj / adv (+ for noun/ pronoun) + to-inf.

↳ Lưu ý: He is too old to work. = He isn't young enough to work.

12. PHRASES OF PURPOSE (Cụm từ chỉ mục đích)

a. Mục đích khẳng định

to-infinitive
in order to / so as to + verb (bare inf.)

b. Mục đích phủ định

in order not to / so as not to + verb (bare inf.)

↳ Lưu ý: Không dùng not to để diễn tả mục đích phủ định.

13. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (Đại từ phản thân)

Các đại từ phản thân myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves thường được dùng làm tân ngữ của động từ khi chủ ngữ và tân ngữ chỉ cùng một người/ vật, có nghĩa 'làm gì đó cho chính mình hoặc tự mình làm điều gì'.

Ex: I'll go and see the President himself.

↳ Lưu ý: By + đại từ phản thân = alone

14. REPORTED SPEECH (Lời nói gián tiếp)

Statements (câu tường thuật): Dùng động từ chỉ thời gian sau hoặc tell, đối với các đại từ hoặc tính từ chỉ nơi chốn.
• will/ shall/ can/ may/ must → would/ should/ could/ might/ mustn't

➤ ĐÔI MỘT SỐ TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ

this, these	→ that, those	here	→ there
now	→ then	ago	→ before
today, tonight	→ that day, that night	yesterday	→ the day before
tomorrow	→ the next/ following day	next week	→ the next/ following week
last week	→ the week before/ the previous week		

⚠ Lưu ý: Khi động từ thuộc thuật chia ở thì hiện tại, hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc tương lai, thì của động từ...

• Yes – No questions

S + asked (+ object) + if / whether + S + V (past tense)

• Wh-questions

S + asked (+ object) + what / where ... + S + V (past tense)

c. Commands, requests, advice (Câu mệnh lệnh, câu yêu cầu, lời khuyên)

S + asked/ told/ ordered/ requested/ advised + object (+ not) + V (to-infinitive)

* Lời khuyên cũng có thể được thuật lại bằng cách dùng mệnh đề *that* (that clause).

S₁ + told/ sb / said (+ that) + S₂ + should (+ not) + verb (bare-infinitive)

⚠ Lưu ý: Khi thuật lại lời khuyên bằng mệnh đề *that*, động từ tình thái *should*, *ought to* hoặc *must* trong lời khuyên trực tiếp thường không đổi.

15. INFINITIVES OR GERUNDS (Động từ nguyên mẫu hoặc danh động từ)

- Động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitives) thường được theo sau các động từ: *afford, agree, appear, arrange, ask, beg, begin, (can't) bear, (can't) afford, (can't) wait, care, choose, continue, decide, desire, expect, fail, forget, happen, hate, help, hope, intend, learn, like, love, manage, mean, neglect, offer, plan, prefer, prepare, pretend, promise, refuse, regret, remember, seem, start, tend, threaten, try, want, wish*
- Động từ dạng *-ing* (gerunds) thường được theo sau các động từ: *admit, avoid, begin, consider, continue, delay, deny, detest, dislike, enjoy, feel like, finish, hate, (can't) help, keep (on), like, love, mind, postpone, practise, prefer, resist, risk, (can't) stand, suggest, stop* và các cụm từ *it's no use, it's no good, there's no point (in), it's worth*.
- Sau *begin, continue, hate, like, love, prefer, intend, start* và *can't bear* có thể dùng động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* hoặc động từ dạng *-ing*. Không có sự khác nhau về nghĩa.
- Sau động từ *forget, remember, regret, try* có thể dùng động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* hoặc động từ dạng *-ing*. Có sự khác nhau về nghĩa.
- *Forget/ remember + to infinitive*: hành động tương lai (việc quên/ nhớ xảy ra trước hành động). *Forget/ remember + -ing form*: hành động quá khứ (việc quên/ nhớ xảy ra sau hành động).
- *Regret + to infinitive*: lấy làm tiếc về điều mình đang làm, chẳng hạn như thông báo tin xấu. *Regret + -ing form*: lấy làm tiếc về điều gì đó đã xảy ra trong quá khứ.
- *Try + to infinitive*: cố gắng làm điều gì. *Try + -ing form*: thử làm điều gì.

16. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

(Cấp so sánh hơn và so sánh nhất của tính từ và trạng từ)

a. Comparatives

short adj / adv + ER + THAN
MORE + long adj / adv + THAN

b. Superlatives

THE + short adj / adv + EST
THE MOST + long adj / adv

➤ Trường hợp ngoại lệ

good / well	→ better → best	little	→ less	→ least
bad / badly	→ worse → worst	far	→ farther / further	→ farthest / furthest
many / much	→ more → most	old	→ older / elder	→ oldest / eldest

⚠ Lưu ý: Trạng từ hai âm tiết tận cùng bằng *-ly* thường được so sánh bằng *more* và *most*, ngoại trừ *early*. Dùng *earlier* và *earliest*, không dùng *more early* và *the most early*.